ENGLISH 9

Student’s Book
English as the main foreign language for the 9th grade of the general secondary schools

Approved by the decree N°369 of the Ministry of Education of the Republic of Azerbaijan on 03.06.2016.


All rights reserved. Reproduction, photocopying or electronic dissemination of this publication or any part of it without special permission is unlawful.

“KÖVSƏR” Publishing House

Your inquiries, comments and suggestions should be sent to kovserneshiyyat@gmail.com and derslik@edu.gov.az email addresses. Thank you for your cooperation in advance.
AZƏRBAYCAN RESPUBLİKASININ DÖVLƏT HİMƏNİ

Musiqisi Üzeyir Hacıbəylinin,
sözləri Əhməd Cavadındır.

Azərbaycan! Azərbaycan!
Ey qəhrəman əvladın şanlı Vətəni!
Səndən ötrü can verməyə cümə hazırlanız!
Səndən ötrü qan tökməyə cümə qədiriz!
Üçrəngli bayrağınla masud yaşa!
Minlərlə can qurban oldu!
Sinən hərbə meydan oldu!
Hüququndan keçən əsgər
Hərə bir qəhrəman oldu!

Sən olasan gülüstan,
Sənə hər an can qurban!
Sənə min bir məhəbbət
Sinəmdə tutmuş məkan!

Namusunu hifz etməyə,
Bayraqını yüksəltməyə
Cümə əncələr müştəqdir!
Şanlı Vətən! Şanlı Vətən!
Azərbaycan! Azərbaycan!
HEYDƏR ƏLİYEV
AZƏRBAYCAN XALQININ ÜMMƏMMİLLİ LİDERİ

HEYDAR ALİYEV
THE NATIONAL LEADER OF THE AZERBAIJANI NATION
CONTENTS

UNIT 1. LANGUAGE
LESSON 1. My Language, My Soul .................................................................6
LESSON 2. Better Late than Never! .................................................................11
LESSON 3. English is a Global Language .....................................................17
Student Portfolio ..........................................................................................25

UNIT 2. SOCIETY AND CHALLENGES
LESSON 1. Family is a Treasure! .................................................................26
LESSON 2. Do You Face Family Conflicts? ....................................................31
LESSON 3. Don’t Move too Fast! .................................................................37
LESSON 4. Everyone Has Rights! .................................................................42
Student Portfolio ..........................................................................................47

UNIT 3. MASS MEDIA
LESSON 1. Spreading the News .................................................................49
LESSON 2. Quality or Popularity? .................................................................55
LESSON 3. The Window to the World! ..........................................................61
LESSON 4. The Eyes and Ears of the Society ...............................................66
Student Portfolio ..........................................................................................73

UNIT 4. ACHIEVEMENTS
LESSON 1. Eyes in the Sky ......................................................................75
LESSON 2. Masters of Our Own Fate ..........................................................80
LESSON 3. The Road to Success .................................................................85
LESSON 4. A Friend or a Foe? .................................................................92
Student Portfolio ..........................................................................................99

UNIT 5. CHARITY AS A NATIONAL VALUE
LESSON 1. We Are the World! .................................................................101
LESSON 2. How Tolerant Are You? ............................................................106
LESSON 3. How Charitable We Are! ............................................................111
LESSON 4. Let’s Try to Reduce Social Problems! .......................................117
Student Portfolio .........................................................................................123

UNIT 6. SIGHTSEEING AROUND THE WORLD!
LESSON 1. The United Kingdom ...............................................................125
LESSON 2. Azerbaijan-Worth Visiting! ......................................................131
LESSON 3. Every City Has a Story .............................................................137
LESSON 4. The Biggest and the Best! ........................................................142
Student Portfolio .........................................................................................150

UNIT 7. LIFE
LESSON 1. Be a Doctor for Yourself! .........................................................152
LESSON 2. How Old Is Your Body? ............................................................156
LESSON 3. Laughing for a Better Life! .......................................................162
Student Portfolio .........................................................................................168
Reader ..........................................................................................................170
Grammar Reference ....................................................................................175
Idioms ..........................................................................................................193
Vocabulary ....................................................................................................195
UNIT 1. LANGUAGE

Lesson 1. My Language, My Soul

What you’ll learn:

• Some rules about the definite article
• Why we consider the Language “The Treasure of a Nation” or “A Road Map of Culture!”
• Ways of communication
• What languages mean

REMEMBER!

• My native language is my soul!
• My native language is my history!
• My mother tongue is my national value!

Word File:

attach [ə’tæʃ] (v) fasten or join one thing to another; syn: add, connect
broadcast [‘brɔ:dka:st] 1. (n) show, production, telecast, a radio or television programme or transmission.
2. (v) show, televise, telecast, transmit a programme or some information by radio or television.
confirm [kən’fʊm] (v) approve, affirm, certify, ratify.
I called the doctor and confirmed the appointment for the next Monday.
diplomacy [dɪ’pləuməst] (n) 1. statesmanship, discussion (s), talks, dialogue, international relations.
2. the profession managing international relations, typically by a country’s representatives abroad. The government should assign an ambassador to oversee diplomacy in the region.
diplomat [‘dɪpləmæt] an official representing a country abroad.
Government leaders, senior officials and diplomats attended the ceremony.
widespread [‘wɜːdspred] (adj) universal, global, worldwide, widely-spread.
It’s obvious that this method of prevention has widespread support.

1 IW. Write the words with the same sound in the right column.

- broadcast confirm process attach dispatch chemistry
- widespread clear diplomacy national action
- tongue motivation progress grammar exchange

[k] [ŋ] [s] [ʃ] [tʃ] [g]
2 CW. Talk about the importance of language and share your ideas.

Language

Music

Art

communication

3 GW. Read the following quotations and give your opinions about them.

**RE MEM BER!**

- “As a person speaks you can define whether he is wise or foolish!”
  *(Prophet Muhammad)*

- “As you speak, I can tell who you are!”
  *(Socrates)*

- “A language is the key to the treasure of the courageous person. The more this door is locked the less we know what the treasurer sells: litter or diamond?!”
  *(Saadi Shirazi)*

4 PW/GW. Read the UI box and the text below and write your own paragraph about languages.

**Useful Information**

The national leader of the Azerbaijani people Heydar Aliyev played a great role in the declaration of the Azerbaijani language as the state language of the country. He really cared about his nation and his native land. He always attached a great importance to his native language and had a deep knowledge of it. On June 18, 2001 Heydar Aliyev signed a decree* on perfection* of measures for the use of the state language.

*(https://en.wikipedia.org/wikiHeydar_Aliyev)*

Language is a road map of culture. Language belongs to each of us. We all speak and listen. When we want to tell other people what we think, we can do it not only with the help of words, but also in many other ways. For instance, we sometimes move our heads up and down when we want to say “yes”, and we move our heads from side to side when we want to say “no”. People who can neither hear nor speak talk to each other with the help of their fingers. People who don’t understand each other’s language have to do the same.

*decrees – an official order issued by a legal authority; order, command, rule
*perfection – improvement, development, consummation (the ideal)*
5 GW. Read and compare the teens’ ideas and fill in the chart.

I live abroad with my family. Besides Azerbaijani, I know English, French, Russian and Turkish well. I’m going to become a diplomat, and I hope that knowing the most widely spoken languages will help me to widen my outlook* in the future. I’ve read a number of poems, stories, novels, watched many films and listened to music in different languages. But I’ve never come across such phrases as: “Jan, ay jan, ahu gozlu, gul uzlu, shirin-sheker bala, chichek qokhulu, maral bakhishli”, etc. in any other language. To my mind, all these sound as a sweet melody, and they only belong to my native language-Azerbaijani! My language is my soul and I’m proud of it.

In friendship, Fidan.

My parents tell me that Spanish is one of the easiest foreign languages to learn. I agree that it’s very useful when travelling in Spanish-speaking countries. Of course, it’s possible to visit Mexico or Spain without knowing a word in Spanish. When I travelled to Spain last year, I was happy to realize that I understood more than people who didn’t speak Spanish. Besides, when I read Spanish magazines or newspapers, I can understand how other people think and feel. Spanish also offers good literature, both modern and traditional. Best wishes, Fredi.

I started learning German at school. I’ve chosen it because in Europe, people speak more German than English, French, Italian, or Spanish as their native language. Germany plays a central role in the EU (European Union), and is a major economic and political power. German has been and remains an international language in many fields, including philosophy, social sciences, physics, engineering, medicine, music, art and history. I think knowing German will open up more career opportunities for me.

Sincerely, Isabella.

I think English is the most widespread world language and 80 percent of all information in computers is in English, 60 percent of all international telephone calls are made in English, 60 percent of the world’s radio stations broadcast in English. And over two-thirds of the world’s scientists write in English. English is also the main language of international conferences, airline services, medicine, diplomacy, and international competitions. I agree that English is easier to learn than any other languages.

Yours, Thomas.

*outlook – a person’s point of view or general attitude to life; viewpoint
1. English is a worldwide language.
2. Fredie is from Germany. He’s German and speaks German.
3. Heroko’s from Japan. His native language is Japanese.
4. Jaime and Diego are from Spain. They are Spanish. They speak Spanish and English.
5. Jean Claude is from France. Jean’s French. He speaks French.
6. Mahammad is from Morocco. He can speak Arabic, English and French.
7. Japanese have a long and interesting history.

*constant – occurring continuously over a period of time
7. PW. Group the words and complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>literature</td>
<td>national</td>
<td>serve</td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. PW. Find the words in italics in the paragraphs and match.

(See Task 5, page 8)

1. a person’s inner character containing true thoughts and feelings
2. the present time or recent times
3. connected with the place where you were born and lived all your life
4. existing over a large area or among many people
5. very large or important
6. a person who represents his/her country abroad
7. being part of the beliefs and customs
8. involving two or more countries

9. IW. Creative Work. Write a paragraph: “My Native Language is My Pride!”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Self-Assessment</th>
<th>Level Reached</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description of Achievement</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• ask and answer questions on languages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• discuss questions on languages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• compare different ideas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• give reasons for my opinions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can read and understand:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• articles/letters about languages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• proverbs and quotations on languages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use the definite article “the”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use topic-related words in context</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• write a paragraph on my native language</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 2. Better Late than Never!

What you’ll learn:
• What we should do to learn English effectively
• Why it is important to learn English well
• How to use too, enough, very, quite

Word File:
adapted [ə’dæptɪd] (adj) combined, modified, smth made suitable for a new situation.
analytical [ˌænəˈlɪtɪkəl] (adj) systematic, logical, using a logical method of thinking about sth in order to understand it, especially by looking at all the parts separately, relating to or using analysis and logical reasoning. 
Analytical methods. Thomas has a clear analytical mind and approach.
contribute [kənˈtɹɪbju:t] (v) give, donate, hand out, present, provide, supply.
focus [ˈfɑʊkəs] (v) (on/upon smb/sth) concentrate, pay particular attention to one particular subject, situation or person rather than another.
Try to focus on the topic.
The courses focus on a number of areas in the US.
opportunity [ˌɔpəˈtjuːnəti] (n) chance, possibility, favourable time, a particular situation that makes it possible to do or achieve sth.
You have the opportunity to ask any questions at the end.
risk [rɪsk] (v) - endanger, (n) a dangerous situation.
take risks - do sth even though you know that sth bad could happen as a result.
You have no right to take risks with other people’s lives.
tendency [ˈtendənsi] (n) an interest in smth, possibility,
For students, there is a tendency to socialize in the evenings. You have a tendency to talk too much when I’m nervous.

1 CW. Find out which word is different in each line.

[g] great grow longevity grammar
[k] analytical practice exist local
[i] adapted tendency language question
[ju:] opportunity community focus music
2 PW. Match the answers with the questions, put them in order and make a presentation looking through UI and Remember boxes.

1. **Khadija:** What tips would you follow to learn it effectively?
2. **Khadija:** Which one and for what purpose?
3. **Khadija:** Would you like to study another foreign language?
4. **Khadija:** What do you do to learn English effectively?
5. **Khadija:** Why is it important to learn English well?

A) **Shahin:** Yes, of course!
B) **Shahin:** Because it’s a widely used language and almost everybody speaks and understands English. Also it’s the language of diplomacy.
C) **Shahin:** I’d follow listening comprehension and speaking activities as they are more practical and important, I think.
D) **Shahin:** English, because it’s the most widespread language.
E) **Shahin:** I attend a prestigious language course and practise it every day.

### Useful Information

English is the richest among the world languages. English surrounds us like the waters of a deep sea. It’s full of *mystery*. In fact, English is a Germanic language. The Anglo-Saxons *contributed* (gave/donated/granted) to the formation of English most of all. English Grammar is still very similar to German. There are also a lot of French words in English from the times when William Duke of Normandy became the King of England in 1066. You can find a lot of Scandinavian words in English, too. They came from the times when the Vikings *raided* Britain. The English Alphabet came from Latin. Christian *monks*, who spoke Latin, brought it to England from Ireland.

### REMEMBER!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin words in English</th>
<th>French words in English</th>
<th>Scandinavian words in English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>street</td>
<td>country</td>
<td>cake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kitchen</td>
<td>court</td>
<td>call</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cup</td>
<td>crime</td>
<td>egg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheese</td>
<td>prison</td>
<td>get</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wine</td>
<td>religion</td>
<td>kick</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angel</td>
<td>prince</td>
<td>kill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wall</td>
<td>royal</td>
<td>score</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paper</td>
<td>adventure</td>
<td>scrub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>change</td>
<td>seat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fruit</td>
<td>skill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>letter</td>
<td>skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>literature</td>
<td>skirt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>magic</td>
<td>sky</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>male</td>
<td>take</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>female</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mirror</td>
<td>them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>question</td>
<td>their</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>special</td>
<td>ugly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>window</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>husband</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*mystery* – something that is difficult or impossible to understand or explain
*raid* – attack, make an attack
*monk* – a member of a religious community of men
1. Don’t phone anybody. It’s … late.
2. The film is boring, because it’s … long.
3. Your questions are … easy.
4. Your pronunciation isn’t good …
5. My sister doesn’t speak English well …
6. I don’t like this city. It’s … big.
7. He has a tendency to take … dangerous risks.
8. I think, going on excursions in summer is … amusing.
9. Jane is … clever and intelligent, she’s made great progress in English lately.

4 IW. Follow the model and give your comments to the speaker’s opinions adding your ideas.

Model: People learn English to … . They think … .

• find better jobs
• read a large variety of international business newspapers
• watch foreign films in the original
• travel all over the world

5 IW. Make up sentences using the given words and translate them.

widespread comprehensive diplomacy important CDs educated progress mystery ambitious ability opportunity fantastic take risks
PW. Listen and practise the dialogue. Pay attention to the words “too, very, enough” and other words given in italics.

Aysel: I get too many questions from my friends at school. They want to know how to learn English.

Samir: English isn’t very difficult. Everybody can learn it.

Aysel: My friends think it’s too late to start now. They are only 15.

Samir: As the proverb goes: “Better Late than Never!” If you’ve got enough motivation you’ll soon make progress.

Aysel: What should they do then? Do they have to study in a private school?

Samir: Oh, they have to work on their English as often as they can. First of all, they should have a good dictionary, and read a lot of books. But they shouldn’t start with English newspapers or books which may be too difficult for beginners. They should find the adapted versions of English books. The main thing is to be enthusiastic to keep reading.

Aysel: Should they watch movies in English?

Samir: They can try, but they shouldn’t get upset if they can’t understand anything. They’ll have to watch the same film again and again, until they understand better.

Aysel: And what about the CDs?

Samir: Oh, English CDs are very useful. It’d be better to listen to them and repeat things after the native speakers. They have to listen to different accents. That will improve their pronunciation and their ability to understand.

Aysel: And what about grammar? Do they have to learn many rules by heart?

Samir: You know, Grammar is very important, of course, but they have to learn it communicatively. However, they should also have enough patience, and also learn quite a lot of poems and songs by heart.

Aysel: Thank you very much, Samir. You’re my favourite “teacher”!

GW. Discuss these questions giving comments.

1. Do they have to learn many grammar rules by heart?
2. And what about CDs?
3. Why should they watch movies in English?
4. How do you learn English?
5. Is it important to listen to different accents? Why?

IW. Look through the sample and give the most appropriate information about yourself. Create an advertisement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scholarship</th>
<th>Intensive programme. You live and work with students from all over the world.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Improve Your English</td>
<td>July-September</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1-2 week courses for intermediate students</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Summer Courses in London</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9 PW. Read these Ss’ e-mail messages. Find out their problems and suggest some solutions.

Hi, dear friend!
It’s me, Gabriella. How are you getting on? I’d like to ask you a question. I like English very much and I try to speak English to the students who come to our school on an exchange programme. I want to get some information about their schools, their customs and traditions. But I can’t understand them so well. I’m afraid of making mistakes while speaking, so I don’t want to take a risk. What should I do? Best wishes, Gabriella.

Hello, dear David!
Nice to hear from you. We are fine here. How are you? How is life in England? I hope you’re doing well with Spanish. You know, those analytical methods of learning a foreign language in language courses help me a lot. Before I usually looked up* for the unknown words in a dictionary but forgot them the next day. Now I feel a growing tendency to find out meaning of words in context. I like your way of speaking Spanish though you have only begun learning it. I have to give a report about the Azerbaijani language in the international conference in London. But I feel nervous about speaking English in public. What do you suggest I should do to overcome this fear? All the best, Murad.

Hi! It’s me, Mary!
Do you remember me? We were in the summer school in London, and we discussed some ways of learning and improving English. I’m afraid, I haven’t made any progress since. I have learned all the grammar rules and words in our textbook, but when I try to speak, I make a lot of mistakes. I try to watch the news in English on Cable News Network (CNN). I read a lot of international business magazines and newspapers, but I don’t understand them very well. I need your advice.

Keep in touch, please. Mary.

10 IW. Read the model and add more statements.
Model: I am a good language learner, because I regularly watch movies in English.
1. I always watch videos or read articles in English.
2. I’m quite analytical, so I have a tendency to focus on the grammar.
3. I’m always looking for opportunities to use the language outside the class.
4. I always take risks with the language and experiment with new ways of learning.
5. I write new words on small slips and learn them one by one.
6. I regularly listen to English programmes on the radio or TV.

11 Choose and write a paragraph on the following:
- “It’s never too late to learn!”
- “Different ways of learning English!”
- “How I can improve my English!”

*look up – search, seek, look for, seek out
OPTIONAL REVISION TASKS
Reading Comprehension and Writing

1. Read the poem and try to answer the question at the end.

A. Enough is too much
   When it’s a horrible dinner
   At grandma’s and she says:
   “Have some more tea.
   That’s not enough food
   For a big child like you”,
   And I say: “Thanks, Granny,
   I’ve had enough, really.”

B. Enough is too little
   When it’s mum’s delicious ice-cream and she says:
   “That’s enough now, dear:
   That’s enough for one day,
   Save some for later.”

C. And I say “Oh, Mum,
   That’s not enough!
   Can I have just a bit more?”
   And she says:
   “Enough is enough!
   Can you tell me, please,
   When enough is enough?”

2. Choose the suitable one.

1. He hasn’t got enough petrol/petrol enough in his car to drive.
2. Have you got money enough/ enough money to buy an ice-cream?
3. The ladder isn’t enough long/long enough to climb up the tree.
4. There is enough food/food enough for dinner at home.
5. The children aren’t enough old/old enough to watch this film.
6. You don’t speak English well enough/enough well.
7. This story isn’t interesting enough/enough interesting.
8. This sentence is short enough/enough short to fit on the page.

*self-Assessment – evaluation, analysis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I ...</th>
<th>Activities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>can remember everything about</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have no problems with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think I need some more practice in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think I need a lot more practice in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REMEMBER!

♦ to have a tendency (to) ♦ to focus (on) ♦ to listen (to)
♦ to make progress (in/with) ♦ to take risks ♦ to go on an excursion
Lesson 3. English is a Global Language

What you’ll learn:

• In what countries people speak English as an official language
• In what countries people speak English as a foreign language
• What you can say about the use of English all over the world
• Why English has become a Lingua Franca
• What factors contributed to its rise as a global language

Word File:

adopt [ə’dɑpt] (v) accept, receive, start using a particular method or show a particular attitude towards sth/sb
barrier [‘bærər] (n) obstacle, dam, wall, like a fence that prevents people from moving forward. The crowd had to stand behind barriers.
circumstance [ˈsəːkəmstəns] (n) 1. case, moment, state, situation
2. a fact or condition connected with or relevant to an event or action They wanted to visit other countries, but the circumstances didn’t permit.
converse [kanˈvɔːs] (v) talk, speak, chat, have a conversation with sb. She fell in beside her, and they began to converse in a friendly manner.
identity [aɪˈdentɪti] (n) 1. name, ID, identification, recognition, the fact of being who or what a person or a thing is.
2. characteristics that distinguish people from others.
Identity and equality are two fundamental relations.
myth [miθ] (n) 1. folk tale, folk story, legend, fable, a story from ancient times
2. sth that many people believe, but that doesn’t exist or is false.

REMEMBER!

You can never understand one language until you understand at least two! (Geoffrey Williams, English author and journalist)
Learning another language is not only learning different words for the same things, but learning another way to think about things! (Flora Lewis, American journalist)

1 IW. Listen and practise.
   • [k] circumstance converse analytical cage
   • [θ] myth theatre faith thunderstorm truth
   • [æ] barrier language pattern that factor
   • [ə:] learn converse turn circumstance hurt
As the use of English as a **Lingua Franca** continues to grow and spread around the world, the language itself is changing-adapting to how its speakers use it. The number of people who speak English as a second language has grown now. Professor David Crystal, a world authority on language change, thinks sounds which some speakers find difficult to pronounce might disappear. And the vocabulary will certainly change, too.

**Lingua Franca** – a shared language of communication, used by people whose main languages are different.

---

a) communicating with native speakers  
b) becoming a diplomat/a politician  
c) reading books in the original  
d) taking an active part in chat sessions  
e) finding a job abroad  

f) getting access to the Internet  
g) travelling everywhere in the world  
h) making presentations in forums  
i) watching films in the original  
j) participating in teleconferences

*caption – a title or brief explanation appended to an article, illustration, cartoon, or poster; heading, headline*
1. How many people speak the language we are now conversing in?
2. When a country adopts English as its language, the country immediately adapts it to the country’s own circumstances. You have to express your ideas about your culture, people and identity. And everything—all the plants and animals, the food and drinks, the myths and the legends, the history of your culture, the politics of it, the folk tales and the music makes up identity.
3. There are about 380 million first language speakers, and about five times as many who speak English as a second or a foreign language, about two billion people, a third of the world’s population speak English.
4. I wonder how many people in the world speak English. Professor David Crystal says that as lots of people begin speaking English, it’s impossible to define the exact facts about English speaking population.
5. So, just as once upon a time there was British English and American English, and then there came Australian English and South African English, and then Indian English and then Caribbean English.
6. Oh, really? How many varieties of English!

GW. Find the meaning of the words in bold in the radio programmes interview. Put them in correct logical order and choose the correct variant.
A) 4,5,6,2,1,3   B) 3,1,4,5,6,2   C) 2,3,1,6,5,4,   D) 5,6,2,1,3,4

1. How many people speak the language we are now conversing in?
2. When a country adopts English as its language, the country immediately adapts it to the country’s own circumstances. You have to express your ideas about your culture, people and identity. And everything—all the plants and animals, the food and drinks, the myths and the legends, the history of your culture, the politics of it, the folk tales and the music makes up identity.
3. There are about 380 million first language speakers, and about five times as many who speak English as a second or a foreign language, about two billion people, a third of the world’s population speak English.
4. I wonder how many people in the world speak English. Professor David Crystal says that as lots of people begin speaking English, it’s impossible to define the exact facts about English speaking population.
5. So, just as once upon a time there was British English and American English, and then there came Australian English and South African English, and then Indian English and then Caribbean English.
6. Oh, really? How many varieties of English!

GW. Discuss the following questions in the “Challenge” box.

**CHALLENGE**

- Why do you think English has become a “Lingua Franca”, used by people around the world to communicate?
- What factors contributed to its rise as a global language?
- What happens when you experience a language barrier?
- How do you think English will change in the next 200 years?
- Do you think it will continue to be a global language? How?
5 GW. Read the International Overview and UI boxes paying special attention to the facts.

**International Overview**
The top five languages in the world according to UNESCO estimates* made a few years ago are: Approximate number of first language speakers:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Speakers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mandarin Chinese</td>
<td>885 million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>380 million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>300 million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>268 million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arabic</td>
<td>200 million</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

80% of all information in the world’s computers is in English.
75% of the world’s letters and faxes are in English.
60% of all international telephone calls are made in English.
More than 60% of all scientific journals are written in English.

**Useful Information**
English is a major world language and one of the richest languages with about 500,000 words in its vocabulary. English is used as an official or semi-official language in over 60 countries in the world. It’s used as an international medium of communication for diplomacy, politics, business and trade, science, technology, medicine, transport, tourism, sport and music, international competitions and advertising. The exact number of how many people speak English today is difficult to tell! It’s more than 20 percent of the world’s population. English is the most widely-spread language on the earth. About 380 million people are native speakers of English.

6 IW. Make a language quiz following the given model.

1. Which is the most spoken language in the world?
   A) Arabic     B) English     C) German     D) French

2. How many people speak English as their first language?
   A) about 380 million     C) over 200 million
   B) a billion and a half    D) about a million

3. How many people in the world speak French?
   A) about 268 million     C) about 500 million
   B) about 300 million     D) about 200 million

4. What’s the percentage of international telephone calls made in English?
   A) about 60%     B) about 75%     C) more than 80%     D) more than 65%

*estimate – an approximate calculation or judgment of the value, number, quantity, or extent of something.
7 GW. Read the ideas below and complete the chart with your own ideas.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>To improve my English I should ...</th>
<th>It’s also important to ...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• listen to the teacher carefully</td>
<td>• learn words and expressions regularly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• take language courses</td>
<td>• listen to CDs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• study and practise regularly</td>
<td>• practise patterns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• speak fluently</td>
<td>• expand* vocabulary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• pay attention to pronunciation</td>
<td>• watch TV programmes in English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• communicate in English</td>
<td>• watch TV programmes in English</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8 PW. Say if you agree or disagree. Give reasons.

**Useful Information**

- English is an international language. Perhaps, it will remain the major world language.
- Different varieties of English will continue to develop around the world.
- The world needs several global languages, not just one.
- German will become a global language in a few years.

9 IW. Write facts for the numbers.

- 80%
- 500,000
- 268 mln
- 300 mln
- 380 mln
- 200
- 60
- 75%
- 885 mln

*expand* – become or make larger or more extensive; extend, widen, broaden
1. The way English continues to move across the globe gives us a whole range of Englishes.
2. In the beginning there was just Indian English and Australian English.
3. When a country adopts a new language it changes it to suit its local needs.
4. There are about 400 billion first language speakers of English.
5. English has been adopted by more than sixty countries around the world.
6. English is the official language only in Great Britain.
7. There are 500,000 words in the English vocabulary.
8. 20 percent of the world’s population speak French today.

Useful Information

When the British landed in North America in 1620, they brought their language with them. Since then, British English (BE) and American English (AE) have developed separately, and there are now some differences between them. The differences are quite small, however, and speakers of American and British English usually have no problems understanding each other. **Sample:** a lift - an elevator, trousers - pants, trainers - sneakers, a swimming costume - a bathing suit, a staff room - a teachers lounge, a programme - a program, a colour - a color, to practise - to practice, etc.

**11** IW. 1. Write a paragraph on “Global Languages”
2. **Design an International Overview About Global Languages.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Self-Assessment</th>
<th>Level Reached</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description of Achievement</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**I can:**
- ask/answer questions on languages
- discuss questions on different languages
- compare facts on the topic
- give reasons for my opinions
- find True/False sentences
- match figures with facts

**I can read and understand:**
- articles about languages
- facts on global languages

**I can:**
- build up sentences using key words
- create a paragraph on global languages
- make a language quiz
Juan Cabello takes pride in not using a mobile phone or the Internet to communicate. Cabello, a silbador, lives on tiny, mountainous La Gomera, one of Spain’s Canary Islands of West Africa. Like his father and grandfather he knows “Silbo Gomero”, a language that is whistled*, and can be heard more than two miles away. This unusual way of communicating arrived with early African settlers 2,500 years ago. Silbo, which comes from the Spanish silbar (means whistling), features four vowels and four consonants that can be used to form more than 4,000 words. “I use it for everything: to talk to my wife, to tell my kids something, to find a friend if we get lost in a crowd”, said Juan. In fact, he makes a living from Silbo performing daily exhibitions at a restaurant on this island of 220 square kilometres. People throughout La Gomera used Silbo in the past as a way of communicating over long distances. Then came the phone. Nowadays, it’s hard to know how many people still use Silbo. Now 3,000 students are studying it, but only a few people are believed to be able to communicate fully in the whistling language. “Silbo” is said to be the most important cultural heritage we have, -said Moises Plasencia, the director of the Canary Islands government. It might seem appropriate for a language that sounds like birdsong to exist in the Canary Islands, but there is thought to be no connection between the islands’ name and the birdsong - like way of communicating. Silbo - like whistling is found in parts of Greece, Turkey, China and Mexico, but none is as developed as Silbo Gomero.

- Where does Juan Cabello live?
- What is the unusual way of communicating they use there?
- What is done to preserve this way of communicating?
- Would you like to learn a language like Silbo? Why? Why not?

Find out what these numbers stand for. There is one that you do not need.

4 2500 220
3000 2
4000 19 1500

*whistle – emit a clear, high-pitched sound by forcing breath through a small hole between one’s lips or teeth
3 Make an interview answering the questions and perform.

Agil: Where is La Gomera?
Fidan: ____________________.
Agil: What theory is there about how Silbo came to La Gomera?
Fidan: ____________________.
Agil: Why did farmers use Silbo in the past?
Fidan: ____________________.
Agil: How many people use Silbo nowadays?
Fidan: ____________________.
Agil: In what countries is Silbo used?
Fidan: ____________________.
Agil: What do they use it for?
Fidan: ____________________.

4 Find the sentences in the text which mean: Experts …
   • believe that only a few people can communicate in Silbo.
   • think there’s no connection between Silbo and the name the “Canary Islands”.
   • say that Silbo arrived with African people.
   • know that people in La Gomera used Silbo in the past to communicate.
   • say that Silbo was used for communicating over long distances.

5 Change the sentences into the Passive Voice.

   Model: Experts think children are the best language learners. 
   Children are thought to be the best language learners.

1. People say Chinese is a difficult language to learn.
   Chinese ... a difficult language to learn.
2. Experts report that some languages disappear every year.
   Some languages ... every year.
3. Experts believe whistling languages exist in other countries.
   Whistling languages ... in other countries.
4. People say the words for finger and toe are the same in some languages.
   The words for finger and toe ... the same in some languages.
5. People know French and Latin influenced the English language.
   French and Latin ... the English language.
6. Experts believe many European languages originated in India.
   Many European languages ... in India.
7. Experts say hundreds of languages died out in the past.
   Hundreds of languages ... in the past.
8. People throughout La Gomera used Silbo in the past.
   Silbo ... throughout La Comera in the past.
In the field of ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In the field of ...</th>
<th>What I learned</th>
<th>How I’ll implement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Writing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logical thinking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical thinking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammar section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other things</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vocabulary Map

1. Complete the table.

2. Make a vocabulary map and write the words you learned around the unit in the box. You can add the meanings in your language.

3. Think and sort out the words according to the parts of speech.

- broadcast
- from
- widespread
- opportunity
- international
- habit
- barrier
- diplomacy
- some
- tendency
- analytical
- focus
- but
- method
- whom
- identity
- for
- confirm
- converse
- clear
- major
- circumstance
- attitude
- global
- improve
- always
- million
- language
- over
- adapt
- where

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Pronoun</th>
<th>None</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 1.  Family is a Treasure!

What you’ll learn:
• What a family is
• Why we call a family “a treasure”
• Why we should all value our families
• How we treat our parents

Word File:
chop off [ˈtʃɔp ɔf] (v) cut smth into pieces, cut off, remove sth by cutting it with a sharp tool.

lean [ˈliːn] (v) lean against, bend or move from an upright position. 

He leaned back in his chair.

metaphor [ˈmetərɔ] (n) trope, a word or a phrase used in an imaginative way. She has a heart of stone.

tenor [ˈtenɔ] (n) sense, the general character, content or meaning of sth.

The even tenor of life in the kitchen was disrupted the following day.

treasure [ˈtreʒə] (n) a collection of valuable things, precious metals as gold, silver, all jewellery riches.

trope [trəʊp] (n) a figurative or metaphorical use of a word or an expression; a word or phrase that is used in a way that is different from its usual meaning in order to create a particular mental image or effect.

trouble [ˈtroʊbl] (n) 1. problems or difficulty, inconvenience, worry

2. a situation that is difficult or dangerous.

I had trouble finding somewhere to park.

trunk [trʌŋk] (n) the main stem/body of a tree as distinct from its branches and roots.

1 CW. Pronounce correctly and find the word/words with a different sound.

[ ʌ ] trouble trunk guide wonderful come

[ e ] treasure tenor assembly congratulate pet

[ ə ] generally trope metaphor advisor measure

[ ɔ ] wash flourish chop plot worry

[ iː ] lean volunteer deal defeat tree
2 CW. Talk about these sayings, metaphors and share your ideas on family looking through the Remember box.

**REMEMBER!**

A *trope* is a figure of speech in which comparison is made between two unlike things that actually have something in common.

A *metaphor* expresses the main item (*the tenor*) in terms of the familiar.

*Sample:* “*Love is a rose*”, “*rose*” is the vehicle for “*love*, *the tenor*.

- Family is a Treasure!
- Knowledge is light!
- Family is life!
- Time is money!
- Life is a dream!
- Good is up, bad is down!
- Family is a school!
- Trust is a treasure!

(www.BestEnglishQuotes.com)

**REMEMBER!**

Everyone needs words of *wisdom*. When we’re learning the things that are going wrong, we all need help. Sometimes the wise words of our *mentors* show us the correct direction/way. But we also need to watch out for advice that sounds good, but doesn’t work. The trick is to know the difference between the two.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>wisdom</td>
<td>the ability to make sensible decisions and give good advice, the experience and knowledge that one has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mentor</td>
<td>an experienced person who advises and helps trainees who have less experience</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GW. Read the story, put the paragraphs in a correct logical order.

A) –  B) –  C) –  D) –  E) –  F) –  G) –  H) –

(1) No more apples for you, the tree said. “No problem, I do not have any teeth to bite” the man replied. “No more trunk for you to climb on.” “I am too old for that now”, said the man. “I really can’t give you anything, the only thing left is my dying roots,” the tree said in tears. (2) So the man cut all the branches of the tree and left happily. The tree was glad to see him happy but the man never came back. The tree was again lonely and sad. One hot summer day, the man returned, and the tree was delighted. (3) One day, the boy came back to the tree, and he looked sad. “Come and play with me”, the tree asked the boy. “I am no longer a kid, I do not play around trees any more”, the boy replied. “I want toys. I need money to buy them.” (4) “I do not need much now, just a place to rest. I am tired after all these years,” the man replied. “Good! Old tree roots are the best place to lean on, come, sit down with me and rest.” The man sat down, and the tree was glad and smiled in tears. (5) A long time ago, there was a huge apple tree. A little boy loved to come and play around it every day. He climbed to the treetop (the top of the tree), ate the apples, then took a nap under the shadow (in the shade). The boy loved the tree, and the tree loved to play with him. Time went by, the little boy grew up and he no longer played around the tree every day. (6) One day, the boy who now turned into a man returned and the tree was excited. “Come and play with me” the tree said.” I do not have time to play. I have to work for my family. We need a house for shelter. Can you help me?” “Sorry, I do not have any house. But you can chop off my branches to build your house.” (7) “Sorry, I have no money, but you can pick all my apples and sell them. So, you will have money.” The boy was so excited. He grabbed all the apples on the tree and left happily. The boy never came back after he picked the apples. The tree was sad. (8) “Come and play with me!” the tree said. “I am getting old. I want to go sailing myself and relax. Can you give me a boat?” said the man. “Use my trunk to build your boat. You can sail far away and be happy.” So the man cut the tree trunk to make a boat. He went sailing. Finally, the man returned after many years. “Sorry, my boy! But I do not have anything for you anymore.”

(www.moralstories.org)

GW. Give the best title and retell the content of the story.

*took a nap – had a short sleep
5 GW. Read the text and discuss the questions below.

Useful Information

A tree is like our parents. When we are young, we love to play with our Mum and Dad. When we grow up, we leave them; we only come to them when we need something or when we are in trouble. No matter what, parents will always be there and give everything they could just to make us happy. You may think the boy in the story is cruel to the tree, but that is how all of us treat our parents. We take them for granted; we don’t appreciate everything they do for us, until it’s too late.

Parents are not around forever! Call them, visit them, take their grandchildren to see them, laugh with them, hug them, let them speak and tell you the same old stories over and over again, cook or bake their favourite food and sweets for them. Treat them with respect, patience and plenty of love! Tomorrow might be too late!

• How do we treat our parents?
• What should we do for our parents and why?
• How do we appreciate our parents for all they do for us?

6 PW. Find out what these expressions mean and use them in sentences of your own. Sample:

a. a collection of valuable things
b. to move from an upright position
c. a general character
d. a difficult situation
e. a dark shape produced by a body coming between rays of light and a surface
f. the main thick stem of a tree
g. a part of a tree that grows out from the main stem
h. the branches at the top of a tree

*granted – admitted, stimulated
Self-Assessment Level Reached
Description of Achievement
Excellent    Good    Fair    Poor
I can read and understand:
• sayings, proverbs, metaphors
• stories, fables about family
• paragraphs and put them in correct order

I can:
• ask/answer questions on metaphors/sayings
• discuss questions on families
• share my ideas on wisdom
• give reasons for my opinions

I can:
• build up sentences using key words
• find synonyms/antonyms of the words
• discuss and write my ideas on wisdom
• write about family values
Lesson 2. Do You Face Family Conflicts?

What you’ll learn:

• What things teens/adults usually complain about and why
• What problems students have in their families
• Why adults/parents criticize their children
• How to solve such challenges/to overcome such obstacles
• What the Gerund is and how to use it

Word File:

angelic [æn’dʒelɪk] (adj) divine, holy, innocent, relating to angels (innocent)

Among the guests there were the Browns family with their two angelic daughters.

[ˈkritɪsaɪz] (v) judge, attack, charge, find fault with, take aggressive action against sb/sth,

A literary text may be criticized on two grounds: the semantic and the expressive.

gang [ˈgeŋ] (n) 1. band, team, an organized group of criminals.

Former military figures were implicated in drug abuse and kidnappings by organized criminal gangs.

2. a group of young people who spend a lot of time together and often cause trouble.

expense [ɪksˈpens] (n) cost, price, fee, payment, the money that you spend on sth, the cost required for sth; the money spent on sth.

She ordered suits at great expense.

miserable [ˈmɪzərəbl] (adj) very unhappy or uncomfortable, sad, depressed.

Their happiness made Anne feel even more miserable.

subculture [ˈsʌbˈkʌltʃər] (n) 1. the behaviour and beliefs of a particular group of people in society that are different from those of most people.

2. a cultural group within a larger culture, often having beliefs or interests.

REMEMBER AND FOLLOW!

The Difference Between School and Life:

■ In school we’re taught a lesson and then given a test.

■ In life, we’re given a test that teaches us a lesson.

(Tom Bodett, American author and voice actor)
GW. Read the magazine articles attentively and complete them with the words from the box.

a) picking  b) watching  c) tidying  d) walking  e) making  f) chatting  g) sitting

Family Problems

My daughter always does her homework at the last minute, usually late on Sunday night. This means she needs Internet, just when her sister sits in front of the computer, and she is never tired of ... (1) with her friends.  Mr. White

My son hates ... (2) his bed. If I make it, I always find strange things in it like dirty socks, CDs without their boxes, empty Coke cans. He dislikes ... (3) his room, it’s always in a mess.  Mrs. Adams

My daughter likes ... (4) around the house eating fast food without a plate, usually just after I’ve tidied the room. She sometimes has dinner at home, but never does the washing up. Then she says: “Sorry” with an angelic smile.  Mr. Brown

My daughter is fond of ... (5) in front of the TV and ... (6) her favourite programme. When she comes into the living room she always watches different programmes on TV. After having a bath she usually leaves wet towels on the bathroom floor. And I’m tired of ... (7) them up.  Mrs. Obst

2 PW. Read the magazine articles and come up with solutions.

Sample: Try to be tidy! Don’t make a mess of your room!
Make your bed yourself!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GRAMMAR SPOT</th>
<th>The Gerund</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gerund</strong> is the - <em>ing</em> form of a verb used as a noun.</td>
<td><strong>as a subject</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Playing tennis is fun.  (Playing is gerund and it’s used as the subject of a sentence).</td>
<td>• He enjoys <em>playing</em> tennis.  (Playing is gerund, used as the object of the verb “enjoy”).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| good at | tired of | responsible for |
| bad at | to be | interested in |
| excellent at | fond of | afraid of |
2 PW. Fill in the gaps with the suitable expressions from the box.

1. My mother is really ... remembering the names.  
   a) fond of  
   b) tired of  
   c) afraid of  
   d) excellent at  
   e) bad at  
   f) good at  
   g) responsible for

2. My sister is ... reading maps.  
2. Children are ... playing computer games.  
3. Aren’t you ... working too many hours?  
4. My father is ... travelling by plane.  
5. Sevda is ... playing the piano.  
6. Teachers are ... bringing up literate and skilled students.

3 GW. Debate on the following problems given in the Challenge box.

- What problems have you got in your family?  
- Do your parents often criticise you? Why?  
- Why do you have to face such problems?  
- How do you solve your problems in the family? Or  
- How would you like to solve them?

4 PW. Read the dialogue paying attention to the words in bold.

Aydan: Well, if you ask me, there is a lot to complain* about when you’re young. It can really be hard sometimes, especially when your parents hardly ever leave you alone.

Khadija: I love my Mom and Dad, but they’re always ready to criticise me and keep saying: “Don’t do this!, Don’t do that!” It often hurts me, really! 

Shahin: Oh, It’s really bad. Frankly, I’m having a big argument with my parents at the moment. I’ve asked them to buy me a motorbike, but they say I can’t ride a motorbike. They told my: “Wait till you are 18.” 

Semra: Oh, I am not allowed to watch films about war. 

Suleyman: That’s really unfair. Actually, when we go on a train or a bus, I have to pay full price for the ticket as adults do. But I have no money. 

Khadija: I can understand how you feel, my friend! I’m lucky to have a part-time job (a half-time job) and get some money.

Aydan: Oh, you’re lucky. Don’t talk about money! I don’t have enough to cover my daily expenses. I can’t wait till I leave school and get a full-time job*. 

Shahin: Oh, no! That would come as a shock for your parents. They want us to do well in school. Honestly, we should always respect them. 

Semra: Yes, of course! You are right!

*complain – express dissatisfaction or annoyance  
*a full-time job – occupying or using the whole of someone’s available working time, typically not less than 40 hours in a week
What are teens’ life ambitions?

Teens want to:
- Enjoy life
- Be independent

How do you feel about teens’ problems?

I feel:
- Urgent*
- Serious

What are the reasons?

Teens:
- Are quite indifferent
- Get upset

What problems do teens have?

Teens have:
- Family
- School

Who can help teens?

• Parents
• School

Useful Information

Teenagers’ problems such as alcohol, fights, violence, AIDS and drugs are global for adults and young people today. Specialists explain that the changes in our society and in the system of our life force young people to choose their own lifestyle. On the one hand, our society agrees that 15-18 year – old people are old enough to be responsible for what they do and give them quite a lot of freedom and rights. On the other hand, most adults think that teenagers are too young to be taken seriously. This misunderstanding* leads to many problems. Actually, some teenagers say that their parents let them do anything they want. Let’s be supportive and help them solve their problems.

Don’t use drugs!
Don’t drink alcohol!
Don’t fight!
Avoid* conflicts!

Don’t smoke!

1. My parents like ... everything organized for them.
2. My granny doesn’t mind ... up early.
3. The girls began ...
4. My friend is excellent at ... himself.
5. We always enjoy ..., logical problems,
6. Our teacher is good at ... quick decisions.
7. ... is forbidden in all public places.
8. My little brother is afraid of ... .

*a) flying
b) making
c) having
d) dancing
e) getting
f) smoking
g) expressing
h) solving

*misunderstanding – a failure to understand something correctly.
*avoid – keep away from or stop oneself from doing (something); run, escape
*urgent – a state or situation requiring immediate action or attention; immediate, express
The best habits
• being a model student
• having a good time
•
•

The worst habits
• smoking
• drinking alcohol
• fighting
•
•

Advice
• Don’t smoke!
• Don’t drink alcohol!
•
•
10 GW. Read the teens’ opinions paying attention to the words in bold and compare them.

Nowadays some young people have become more violent in big cities and it makes their life miserable. Such groups of people or subcultures are awful, because they are like criminals and their groups are like gangs. I think all these groups should be forbidden*. There should be more sports centres, art clubs, etc. for the young. In that case children would be more creative and we’ll have more successful young people in our society.

Violence is the symptom of problems in society. Home, school, and neighbourhood are parts of the individual environment of teens. There aren’t many organizations or enough sport clubs that are interesting for teens. Besides, many hobbies and sports activities are expensive and teens can’t afford* to take any interest in them.

I think the media makes the situation worse. The bad image of the youth groups is presented by the press. A lot of teens think about changing the world for a better place. They help people around them, they help nature. I’m sure, teenagers will become good citizens. Participating in international conferences, cooperating with their partners, taking an active part in forums, seminars and sessions they will become, in their turn, good models for the youth.

11 IW. Match the halves.

1. to declare  
2. damage or injury that is caused by a person or an event  
3. the money that you spend on something  
4. a group of people who share the same language, history, culture  
5. an organized group of criminals  
6. very unhappy or uncomfortable

a) miserable  
b) gang  
c) proclaim  
d) race/ethnic group  
e) expense  
f) harm

12 IW. Write a paragraph: “How Teenagers Should Be Supported”.

Self-Assessment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Things I learned about</th>
<th>A lot more</th>
<th>A bit more</th>
<th>Little</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>teens’ today’s problems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teens’ good/bad habits</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>psychologists’ recommendations for the teens</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the use of Gerund</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*forbidden – not allowed; banned  
*afford – have enough money to pay for; make available
Lesson 3.  Don’t Move Too Fast!

What you’ll learn:

• How we can organize our time in our daily life
• What our life balance is
• What we face nowadays
• How to build up sentences using quantifiers

REM EMB E R! 

I asked Life: “Why are you so difficult?”
Life smiled and said: “You, people never appreciate easy things!”
“Difficult” doesn’t mean “impossible!” It simply means that you have to work hard!
Time is like a river! You can’t touch the same water twice, because the flow that has passed will never pass again! Enjoy every moment of your life!

(www.BestEnglishQuotes4U.com)

Word File:

ban [bæn] 1. (n) an official or legal prohibition.
   2. (v) prohibit, disallow, officially or legally prohibit/forbid sth.
   He was banned from driving for a year.
obsess [ɔb’ses] (v) completely fill your mind so that you cannot think of anything else.
   He is obsessed with computers. Music continued to obsess him in many of his stories.
sickness [‘sɪknɪs] (n) illness, disease. She was absent due to sickness.
stressful [‘stresful] (adj) causing mental or emotional stress or anxiety and worry.
   A stressful job/lifestyle. Corporate finance work can be stressful.
slow down [‘sləu daun] (v) 1. be slow, be late 2. delay, postpone
rule [ru:l] 1. manage, control, conduct, drive, govern, lead, guide
   2. reign, rule (over) the country.

1 CW. Find the word with a different sound:

   [ s ]  sickness version obsess serious custom
   [ z ]  because prison single pleasant praise
   [ u ]  stressful took cause beautiful book
   [ ʃn ] appreciation confusion solution passion caption
Not long ago people believed that in the future we would work less, have more free time and be more relaxed. But today we work harder and longer hours and we’re more stressed than ten years ago. We walk faster, talk faster and sleep less than previous generations. And although we’re obsessed with machines that help us to save our time, we have less free time than our parents and grandparents had. But what is this doing to us and our health? An American journalist James Gleick writes: “Faster means that people who live in cities are suffering from “hurry sickness” - we always try to do more things in less time. As a result, our lives are more stressful. He says that if we don’t slow down, we shan’t live as long as our grandparents or parents. And we must bear in mind that faster doesn’t mean better.
I’ve chosen a lifestyle that I like and that gives me quite a lot of many free time. But my father works more than 70 hours a week for a car company. Lots of Much Japanese people do the same. There is an expression in Japanese, karoshi, which means “dying because you work too hard too much hard.” A lot of people in Japan work too many too much. I think my generation is different. We don’t want our lives to be ruled by work. I work a few a little hours a day and that gives me enough money money enough to live. I spend the rest of my time seeing my friends and playing baseball with my family and friends.

Masaco, project assistant, Tokio.

I didn’t use to have much time many time for anything, because I was working too many hours too many hours 45 or more a week. In France people have to work only 35 hours a week. Nowadays I have plenty of time plenty time for myself. I play tennis two evenings a week and I finish work at lunchtime on Friday, so I can have long weekends. I think when you have time to enjoy your personal life, you work much better!

Fransua, lawyer, Paris.

I’m not happy with my work life balance at all. I work at least 50-60 hours a week, so I don’t have many much time to see my children. I communicate with my husband by leaving messages on the fridge. We work different hours and I never have time to see my friends or keep fit. I think I have to make a lot a lot of changes in my lifestyle.

Amelie, project manager, Boston.

GW. Choose the correct one to complete the sentence.
1. Many a lot of progress is made by students at schools.
2. People in Japan work too much too many hours.
3. I don’t have enough time many time to help you.
4. Eating too much too many can lead you to serious disease.
5. Too much too many salt spoils the broth!
Semra: Do you have more or less free time than a year ago? Why?

Semra: How do you get to work/school? How long does it take you? Is this longer than a year ago?

Semra: Do you usually arrive on time at work/at school, for your English class, to meet your friends? Why/ Why not?

Semra: What appliances do you have which save your time? Do they make your life simpler or more complicated/easier?

Semra: Do you waste much time every day? Doing what?

Semra: How much time do you have for yourself/for your family/friends?

Suleyman: ____________________________ .

Suleyman: ____________________________ .

Suleyman: ____________________________ .

Suleyman: ____________________________ .

Suleyman: ____________________________ .

Suleyman: ____________________________ .

5 PW. Interview your partner using the questionnaire. Make your own questionnaire. Model: What do you spend more time on?

Possible answers: I spend a lot of (much) time watching TV/talking on the phone.

- Working or studying
- Sitting in Traffic
- Listening to music

Semra: Do you have more or less free time than a year ago? Why?

Semra: How don’t you have enough time for?

Semra: How do you get to work/school?

Semra: How long does it take you? Is this longer than a year ago?

Semra: Do you usually arrive on time at work/at school, for your English class, to meet your friends? Why/ Why not?

Semra: What appliances do you have which save your time? Do they make your life simpler or more complicated/easier?

Semra: Do you waste much time every day? Doing what?

Semra: How much time do you have for yourself/for your family/friends?
PW. Match the paragraphs 1-4 with the titles A-D and retell them.

1. No Time for the News
2. No Time to Listen
3. No Time to Relax
4. But More Time in Our Cars

A) ________ Newspaper articles today are shorter and the headlines are bigger. Most people don’t have enough time to read the articles, they only read the headlines! On TV and the radio, newsreaders speak more quickly than ten years ago.

B) _______ The only thing that is slower than before is the way we drive. Our cars are faster but the traffic is worse, so we drive more slowly. We sit in our cars and spend more time in the cars feeling stressed. Experts predict that in ten years’ time the average speed on the road in cities will be 17 km p/h.

C) _______ Even when we relax we do everything more quickly. Ten years ago when people went to art galleries they used to spend at least some minutes to look at each picture. But today we spend just a few seconds!

D) _______ Some answer phones now have “quick playback” buttons so that we can re-play people’s messages faster-we can’t waste time by listening to people.

IW. Complete the solutions using the given verbs in the box.

plant  encourage  create  ban  reduce  start  find  take care of

... unemployment!
... Children!
... people to do more sport!
... time to relax!
... a healthier way of life!
... more green areas and ... more trees!
... cars from the city centre!
... fast food restaurants!

IW. Write a paragraph on the quote: “Slow down, you move too fast!”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Self-Assessment</th>
<th>Level Reached</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Description of Achievement</strong></td>
<td><strong>Excellent</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can read and understand:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• texts/passages/paragraphs about work/life balance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• talk about pictures on the topic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• make up an interview on work/life balance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• come up with solutions on the topic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• write a paragraph on the topic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• build up sentences using the quantifiers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 4. Everyone Has Rights!

What you’ll learn:
• What a Convention is
• What rights we have as citizens
• What rights the Children’s Convention gives you
• What UNCRC and its foundation mean

Word File:
cruelty [‘kruəlti] (n) behaviour that causes pain or suffering to others.
discrimination [dɪsˈkrɪmənɪtʃən] (n) intolerance, unfairness.

*Discrimination* between right and wrong.

Racial discrimination.
harm [hɑːm] (n) damage or injury that is caused by a person or an event.
interfere [,ɪntəˈfɪə] (v) get involved in and try to influence a situation that doesn’t concern you, in a way that annoys other people.
poverty [‘pɔvəti] (n) the state of being poor.

Many elderly people live in poverty.

proclaim [prəˈkleɪm] (v) declare, tell people about sth important officially.
The president proclaimed a state of emergency.

race [reis] (n) a group of people identified as distinct from other groups because of supposed physical or genetic traits who share the same history, language, culture; ethnic group

1 CW. Pronounce the words correctly writing them in the right column. Tick the ones with a different sound.

discrimination early media interfere familiar career race

Ceremony cruelty magnificent poverty match particular cake
castle proclaim discrimination harm party surround sparkle
All children must get names and become a citizen of a certain country.
The Government must give children good medical care.
All children should have rights whatever their race, gender, religion, language, disability, opinion or family background are.
Children should have a chance to live in a safe and unpolluted environment with good food and clean drinking water.
Children with disabilities must be helped to be as independent as possible.
Children should have the best chance to develop their abilities.
Every child can go to school.
Schools should help children to develop their skills, teach them about their own and people’s rights and prepare them for adult life.
The Government must protect children from harm, cruelty, abuse (the improper use of something; misuse) and dangerous drugs.
Children should have the right to join organizations, take part in meetings and peaceful demonstrations which don’t affect other people’s rights.
Every child should have a chance to rest and play.
Children must have speech rights. They can say what they think. What they say should be carefully listened to.
The Government must protect children from exploitation* and dangerous work which can harm their health or interfere with their education.
Children should have access to information especially that which can make their life better.

- What rights do children have?
- What rights should children have? Why/ Why not?
- How can rights help children?

*privacy – the state or condition of being free from being observed or disturbed by other people; isolation
*exploitation – the action or fact of treating someone unfairly in order to benefit from their work; making use of
PRACTISE AN INTERVIEW!

4 PW. Read the UI box and answer the questions. Play a role.

Useful Information

To protect children’s rights the UN (United Nations) has worked out an international agreement called the UNCRC (United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child). It gives children different rights. Disabled children have the right to take a full and active part in the life of the community!

All children and all people should enjoy equal rights for everything!

June 1- Children’s Day is recognized in many places around the world to honour children globally. It was first proclaimed by the World Conference for the well-being of Children in 1925. The International Day for the Protection of Children is observed in many countries as the Children’s Day. The first celebration took place on 1 June 1950. It’s a day of worldwide fraternity*. On June 1 different performances and concerts, competitions and song contests are organized and held for children all over the world.

Turgut: What rights does the Convention proclaim?
Lale: ____________________________________________________.

Turgut: Which rights couldn’t you find in the Convention?
Lale: ____________________________________________________.

Turgut: What right is fair for you? Why/Why not?
Lale: ____________________________________________________.

Turgut: Which rights seem most important to you?
Lale: ____________________________________________________.

Turgut: What rights do children in Azerbaijan have?
Lale: ____________________________________________________.

5 PW. Make a list of your rights, put them in order of importance. Then compare your list with your partner’s.

*fraternity – a group of people sharing a common profession or interests; brotherhood, fellowship, friendship
International Overview

The United Nations or the UN is an international organization. Most countries of the world are UN members. It’s open to all “peace-loving” states. The UN tries to support peace all over the world and to stop war, hunger and poverty. For this the UN works on a number of projects to implement the peace-loving policy in the whole world.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>convention</td>
<td>the way in which sth is done that most people in a society expect and consider to be polite or the right way to do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fraternity</td>
<td>a group of people sharing the same profession, interests or beliefs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exploitation</td>
<td>a situation in which sb. treats sb else in an unfair way especially in order to make money from their work.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 GW. Read the teens’ thoughts and complete the table. Debate.

I agree that to have the right to life and protection is very important. But in my opinion, the Convention is useless. I think it can’t help children’s needs and interests. The Convention doesn’t interest me. It’s too complicated. I doubt whether it can give children real rights. Lale

I’m sure the Convention is great and gives children more rights. I think it will help all children in their future life and career. For the first time children have a document where it is said that they have the right to work together on their problems. The Convention says that all children have the right to life and protection. Vagif

Remember how to express:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agreement</th>
<th>Disagreement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>It seems to me ...</td>
<td>I doubt ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In my opinion ...</td>
<td>I am not sure ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personally, I feel that ...</td>
<td>I’m afraid ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m sure that ...</td>
<td>I can’t agree with ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think ...</td>
<td>I don’t think ...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I agree that ...</td>
<td>I completely disagree ...</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 IW. Project. Create a paragraph: “How Can Rights Help Children?”
8 GW. The statements are wrong. Correct them giving comments.
1. The Convention cannot do anything about war and cruelty.
2. Everybody can open children’s letters and listen to their phone calls.
3. The Government will never protect children from harm, cruelty or abuse.
4. Children can never get information that would make their life better.
5. Only teachers can help children to develop their skills.
6. The government can’t give children good medical care.
7. Children don’t have to take part in different activities or demonstrations.
8. The Convention doesn’t interest people.

9 PW. Think and complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Meaning (close meaning)</th>
<th>Synonym</th>
<th>Opposite</th>
<th>Build up a sentence</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>privacy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>force</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cruelty</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>realize</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>punish</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>respect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exploitation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>race</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10 IW. Odd one out giving reasons.
1. harm, cruelty, peace-loving  3. peaceful, information, permission
2. protection, exploitation, clever  4. peace, healthy, convention

11 IW. Find the close meaning of the given words. Sample: 1. - c

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a) detective stories</td>
<td>a) problem/challenges</td>
<td>a) place of criminals</td>
<td>a) circumstances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b) disagreement</td>
<td>b) lack of good life</td>
<td>b) private school</td>
<td>b) conditions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c) cruel actions</td>
<td>c) disease</td>
<td>c) children’s home</td>
<td>c) family</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d) conflicts</td>
<td>d) drug/addiction</td>
<td>d) boarding schools</td>
<td>d) school</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e) misbehaviour</td>
<td>e) smoking</td>
<td>e) orphanage</td>
<td>e) opportunity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12 IW. Write a paragraph: 1. “Let’s Learn Children’s Rights!” or
2. “The Most Important Rights For Me Are ...”
1. Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In the field of ...</th>
<th>What I learned</th>
<th>How I’ll implement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Writing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logical thinking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical thinking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammar section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other things</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Make a vocabulary map and write the words you learned around the unit in the box. You can add the meanings in your language as well.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning/Synonym</th>
<th>Opposite/Antonym</th>
<th>Useful Phrases/Expressions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Think and sort out the words according to the parts of speech.

- chemical
- obsess
- happen
- race
- political
- proclaim
- concern
- ban
- poverty
- who
- cruelty
- harm
- criticize
- contribute
- illness
- gang
- angelic
- why
- without
- force
- stressful
- how
- society
- from
- attempt
- experience

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Question word</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4 Choose the correct one to complete the sentences.
1. There is a lot/too many paper and plastic bottles on the ground.
2. Too many/too much rubbish is just thrown away.
3. I’ve got only a few/few friends who recycle things.
4. I probably eat too much/too many sweets.
5. I know a few/a little words in other languages.
6. I’d take too much/a lot of warm clothes to the North.
7. She doesn’t drink enough water/water enough.
8. Sam eats too much/too many meat.
9. There are too many/too much cars on the roads today.
10. Hurry up! We’ve got very little/very a little time.
11. Don’t run! I have few/plenty of time.
12. I don’t like this city. There is too many/too much traffic.

5 Match the verbs with the phrases and use them in a dialogue/situation.

| 1. to express | 7. to make | a) ... your bed | g) ... things on the floor |
| 2. to rent | 8. to tidy | b) ... the washing up | h) ... a fashion show |
| 3. to do | 9. to pay | c) ... a programme | i) ... strange things |
| 4. to enjoy | 10. to find | d) ... empty Coke cans | j) ... the life |
| 5. to ruin | 11. to throw | e) ... an unusual decision | k) ... a flat |
| 6. to take | 12. to pick up | f) ... the first month’s rent | l) ... the room |

6 Write the close meanings of the words. (See Task 11, page 46)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protection</th>
<th>Cruelty</th>
<th>Convention</th>
<th>War</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a)</td>
<td>a)</td>
<td>a)</td>
<td>a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b)</td>
<td>b)</td>
<td>b)</td>
<td>b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c)</td>
<td>c)</td>
<td>c)</td>
<td>c)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 Make up word combinations with your own ideas and use them in sentences.
Model: to create (favourite) programmes.

1. to create 4. to find 7. to meet 10. to waste
2. to encourage 5. to reduce 8. to relax 11. to slow down
3. to watch 6. to think 9. to look like 12. to look after
Lesson 1. Spreading the News

What you’ll learn:
• What role the Media have in our life
• How the media influence our life
• What the first newspapers in Azerbaijan, in the UK and USA are
• What "a tabloid" and "a broadsheet" mean
• What compound nouns are

[ʃ] commercial issue [e] credible condensed

Word File:
cable ['keibl] (n) wire, power line, transmission line, typically used for construction. An underground cable, an electricity cable.
commercial [kəˈməʊʃən] (adj) 1. trade, trading, business, private enterprise, sales concerned with or engaged in commerce. A commercial agreement.
    2. money-oriented, making or intended to make a profit.
condensed [ˈkɒndɪst] (adj) impacted, pressed, thickened, compressed or concentrated. A condensed version of the report.
credible ['krɛdəbl] (adj) trustworthy, reliable, faithful, probable, possible, believable/believed, convincing. Few people found his story credible.
issue ['ɪʃu:] 1. (n) matter, matter in question, topic, problem, an important topic or problem for debate or discussion. The issue of global warming.
    2. (v) print, publish, give, print
The newspaper was issued two years ago.
major ['meɪdʒə] (adj) vital, great, considerable, utmost, prime, important, serious, or significant.
The use of drugs is a major problem.
transmission [trænz'mɪʃn] guide, broadcasting, telecast

1 PW. Odd one out.

A 1. disaster, crash, dramatic
    2. newspaper, magazine, cable
    3. belief, opinion, view
    4. condensed, funny, ordinary
    5. forget, believe, internet

B 1. issue, credible, commercial
    2. spread, satellite, viewer
    3. regional, major, browse
    4. media, teletype, increase
    5. television, camera, legal
**PRACTISE AN INTERVIEW!**

2 PW. Look through the UI box and make an interview. Act it out.

### Useful Information

Free mass media and meeting modern world standards are important goals in Azerbaijan today. Every condition is created for the free development of **mass media**, the fourth power of the state. Mass media have created legal and ethical norms, the right to publication of facts and views for journalistic reporting, etc. The Republic of Azerbaijan has a leading position among the **CIS** (**Commonwealth of Independent States**) and the Eastern European countries for the quality and quantity of mass media. At present more than 1800 mass media agencies work in Azerbaijan and about 1750 of these are newspapers, 80 are TV and radio agencies.

### Words Meanings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>words</strong></th>
<th><strong>meanings</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tabloid</td>
<td><em>(n)</em> a newspaper with small pages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broadsheet</td>
<td><em>(n)</em> a newspaper printed on large size paper, generally considered more serious than smaller newspapers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mass</td>
<td><em>(adj)</em> affecting or involving a large number of people/things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>media</td>
<td><em>(the media)</em> <em>(n)</em> the main ways that large numbers of people receive information and entertainment that is TV, radio, newspapers. Media <em>(plural)</em> or mediums - a way of communicating information. <strong>The media have/are ...</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3 \textbf{GW. Debate on the ideas below giving explanation and exchanging ideas. Pay attention to the words in italics (the Gerund).}

People in the past learnt about news from \textit{newspapers}. But today some people aren’t interested in newspapers. Nowadays they usually learn what’s happening in the country and in the world from TV or radio news programmes or from the Internet. I think we cannot imagine our life without \textit{reading} newspapers.

It’s true that the world today is full of dramatic events and most news seems to be bad news. But people aren’t interested in reading ordinary events. That’s why there are so many programmes and articles about natural disasters, plane crashes, wars, murders and robberies. Good news doesn’t usually make headlines*, but bad news does.

I want to speak about the kinds of newspapers. There are dozens of them on every \textit{newsstand*}. There are newspapers for professionals, \textit{businessmen} and \textit{sports fans}, for children and \textit{teenagers}, men and women, for those who like \textit{knitting}, \textit{sewing}, \textit{gardening} and keeping pets. Many newspapers express certain political opinion and people choose them according to their own political beliefs. In short, you can always find a paper which suits your opinions and interests.

\textbf{GRAMMAR SPOT}

\textbf{COMPOUND NOUNS}

\textbf{Compound nouns} are formed by joining two or more words. Some short common compound nouns are written as one word, e.g. \textit{bedroom, postman, newspaper, toothpaste, headline}, etc. A few are written with a hyphen, e.g. \textit{t-shirt, make-up}. But most are written as two words, e.g. \textit{bus stop, washing machine, living room, swimming pool}, etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun+noun</th>
<th>Adjective+ noun</th>
<th>Noun+ Preposition+noun</th>
<th>Noun+ verb</th>
<th>Verb+noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>toothpaste</td>
<td>whiteboard</td>
<td>mother-in-law</td>
<td>newsstand</td>
<td>swimming-pool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>headline</td>
<td>fullmoon</td>
<td>father-in-law</td>
<td>haircut</td>
<td>sewing machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newspaper</td>
<td></td>
<td>editor-in-chief</td>
<td>sunshine</td>
<td>machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bedroom</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sunset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homework</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>sunrise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>network</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moonlight</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*\textit{headline} – a heading at the top of an article or page in a newspaper or magazine; title, caption

*\textit{newsstand} – a stand or stall for the sale of newspapers; newsstall
The term “Media” is used to describe various news organizations and communication networks. The “news media” in the US includes, for example, 1,822 daily newspapers, 7,957 weekly newspapers and at least 11,000 magazines. Both the number and circulation of major magazines have increased recently. The “News Media” also includes the three television networks and the hundreds of individual stations that carry their programmes. The networks are the National Broadcasting Company (NBC), the Columbia Broadcasting System (CBS) and the American Broadcasting Company (ABC). About one thousand television stations in the US serve regional audiences. Three quarters of them are commercially operated; the other quarter is non-commercial public stations. Viewers in a large city may choose from nine stations. Approximately 8,500 radio stations also serve regional audiences. Furthermore, most Americans consider television their most important source of news. They also find television the most credible source of news. The term “Media” is also used in another important sense referring to the channels of communication through which information can pass. It also includes telephone systems, cables, telex transmission lines, teletype operations, satellite systems and the Internet. (Adapted from a British newspaper)

Abbreviations
- NBC – National Broadcasting Company
- CBS – Columbia Broadcasting System
- ABC – American Broadcasting Company
- CNN – Cable News Network

Visit your school ICC, search the facts on the Internet and fill in the chart about the Media in our country.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Daily newspapers</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Weekly newspapers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Magazines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Commercial TV stations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radio Stations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GW. Answer the questions looking through the UI box.

Useful Information

In the UK there are two main kinds of newspapers: broadsheets *(a large piece of paper; a poster)* and tabloids*. Originally these names came from the size of the newspapers. A tabloid format newspaper was smaller and the broadsheet format newspaper was bigger. But nowadays when we talk about tabloids and broadsheets, we talk about two different kinds of newspapers: easy reading and quality newspapers. Tabloids report news in a very condensed form. They write about celebrities, the British Royal Family, sport, crime stories and scandals*. Broadsheets give their readers long, detailed reports on the latest news and focus on more serious things: politics, economy, government, international events, business, culture, etc.

Samira: What kind of articles do newspapers/magazines carry? Vagif: _____.
Samira: What do you usually look for when you look through a newspaper/magazine? *(private lives, advice page, scientific reports, posters, etc.?)* Vagif: _____.
Samira: What’s the difference between tabloids and broadsheets? Vagif: _____.
Samira: What do tabloids write about and broadsheets focus on? Vagif: _____.
Samira: Do we have such kind of newspapers in Azerbaijan? Vagif: _____.

PW. Sort the nouns out, write them in the appropriate box. Use them in your own sentences.

opinion, circulation, newspaper, political, headline, crash, for, businessman, newsstand, teenager, government, network, dramatic, broadsheet, tabloid, radio, broadcast, communication, source, station, telephone, fan, walkie-talkie, celebrity, text-messaging, channel, cartoon-maker

Simple  Derivative  Compound  Other

*tabloid – a newspaper having pages half the size of those of a standard newspaper; dominated by headlines, photographs, and sensational stories
*scandal – an action or event regarded as morally or legally wrong; immoral and unethical behavior
Useful Information

• “Ekinchi”, the first national Azerbaijani newspaper appeared in Baku on 22 July 1875. Hasan bey Malikov was the founder of the Azerbaijani press, a prominent (famous) intellectual of his time and the editor of the newspaper “Ekinchi”. The publication of “Ekinchi” was a progressive step in the cultural history of the Azerbaijani people. So, the creation of a national newspaper was really great progress and evolution. “Ekinchi” was considered “the first swallow” (messenger) of the Azerbaijani press and gave a powerful impetus* to the formation of the national press.

• The first English newspaper was the weekly “Courant” which appeared in 1621. The first daily, The Daily Courant, was issued in 1702. The Oxford Gazette, first published in 1665, had the longest life.

• The first American newspaper “Public Occurrences”, was published in Boston, on 25 September 1690. The first newspaper “The Newsletter” was issued in 1704, which survived for 70 years. There are more than 9,000 newspapers, 1700 are dailies. There is one national newspaper, “USA Today”, with a circulation of about 1.2 million copies. “The Wall Street Journal”, “The New York Times”, and “The Washington Post” are read all over the world.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions:</th>
<th>Ekinchi</th>
<th>Courant</th>
<th>Public Occurrences</th>
<th>USA Today</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• When and where was it published?</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Who was the founder?</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Which one was considered &quot;the first swallow&quot;?</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• How long did they exist?</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.2 million | 9,000 | 1700
1704 | 70 | 1702
1690 | 1621 | 1702
1665 | 1875 | 1875

9 IW. Read the numbers and make notes on the facts in the passages.

10 IW. Write an essay “The First Swallow” of the Azerbaijani press.

*impetus – the force or energy with which a body moves, impulse
Lesson 2. Quality or Popularity?

What you’ll learn:

• Why different articles and stories are published in newspapers
• Ways of making newspapers popular
• What (kind of issues/articles) brings popularity to newspapers
• How to use Participle I and Complex Object

Word File:

distribute [dɪˈstrɪbjuːt] (v) (sth to/among sb/sth) give things to a large number of people; share sth between a number of people. They distributed food and blankets to the earthquake victims.
flee [fliː] (v) (fled, fled) (from sb/sth-to/into) leave a person or place very quickly. He fled to London after an argument with his family.
gear [ɡeə] (n) machinery in a vehicle that turns engine power into movement.
ignition [ɪɡˈnaʃn] (n) the action of setting something on fire or starting to burn. Three minutes after ignition, the flames were still growing.
scream [skriːm] 1. (v) cry, give a loud, high cry
   2. (n) a loud, high cry made by sb (noise).
siren [ˈsaɪrən] (n) a device that makes a long loud sound as a signal or warning.
smash [smæʃ] (v) break sth violently. He smashed the radio to pieces.
snatch [snætʃ] (v) grab, take sth quickly and often rudely or roughly.
   He snatched up his jacket and left the room.
   She snatched a cookie from the plate.
yank [jæŋk] (v) pull sth/sb hard/quickly and suddenly.
   Her hair was yanked, and she screamed.

1 CW. Find the word with a different sound.

| æ | yank snatch brilliant frank
| ŋ | blank ignition length strong
| dʒ | passenger gear junior soldier
| ʃ | population scream species share

REMEMBER!

Superstition – the belief that particular events happen in a way that can’t be explained by reason or science, the belief that particular events bring good or bad luck. There are people all over the world who believe in superstitions.
2. PW. Listen to the superstitions and explain them in your own words.

Do you believe in superstitions? Why/Why not?

1. If a black cat walks in front of you, you’ll have bad luck. *(Azerbaijan)*
2. If a black cat walks in front of you you’ll have good luck. *(Britain)*
3. If you break a mirror, you’ll have bad luck for seven years.
4. If you see a shooting star in the sky, you can make a wish.
5. If you spill salt on the table, you should throw it over your shoulder.
6. If you hang horseshoes above the door, it can keep witches away and it will bring you good luck.
7. If you light candles around your house, it’ll protect you from bad spirits. *(India)*
8. If you have an evil eye talisman* on you it protects you from evil eyes and brings good luck and success to you. *(Turkey/Azerbaijan)*

---

**GRAMMAR SPOT**

**PARTICLE I / PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

*Participle I or Present Participle* is the Non-Finite form of the verb. It is formed with adding *-ing* to the verb.

We can use *Participle I* to give more information about a noun. They can be described as shortened relative clauses *(defining or non-defining).*

Clauses with a present participle replace an active verb. The verb they replace can be in any tense. *Participle I* can be used with adverbs of time, manner, reason.

**Note:** Pay special attention to ...

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>double consonant+ing</th>
<th>+ing</th>
<th>y+ing</th>
<th>e →+ing</th>
<th>ie→y+ing</th>
<th>y+ing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>swimming</td>
<td>walking</td>
<td>crying</td>
<td>make-making</td>
<td>lie-lying</td>
<td>playing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beginning</td>
<td>waiting</td>
<td>hurrying</td>
<td>have-having</td>
<td>die-dying</td>
<td>staying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sitting</td>
<td>speaking</td>
<td></td>
<td>write-writing</td>
<td></td>
<td>buying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hitting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>drive-driving</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>winning</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

*talisman* – an object, typically an inscribed ring or stone, that is thought to have magic powers and to bring good luck; an amulet
GW. Look through the headlines paying attention to the words in italics. Explain the use of -ing words. Retell the content of the passages.

- **Read the passage “A Purr-fect Photo” and answer:**
  a) Can black cats bring good luck? How? b) Do you like such articles? Why?

  **A Purr-fect Photo**
  Black cats don’t necessarily bring bad luck. Christy Arnold likes taking photos of black cats. She has a black cat named Shadow. After Shadow got dirty **prowling** around the basement, Christy’s dad gave Shadow a bath. *Focusing* her camera on the cat Christy tried to take some photos. The black and white portrait, entitled “The Black Creature from the Lagoon”, won Christy the $10,000 grand prize in the Kodak International Newspaper Snapshot Award contest.

- **Retell the content of the passage “A Tip of the Hat” and answer the questions.**
  a) Who does Mollie use hats for? b) What did she distribute to five hospitals? c) Why did Mollie start a campaign? d) How did she know about donating hats?

  **A Tip of the Hat**
  Mollie Schmitt uses hats to help cancer victims feel better about themselves. A few years ago she saw a brochure asking kids to donate new or unused hats. The hats would go to kids with cancer and who had lost their hair. When Mollie checked her collection box she counted only 50 hats. *Feeling* sad she tried to help the children who were sick and lost their hair. So Mollie gathered almost 5,000 hats which she distributed to five hospitals in south Florida. She called her friends saying “It’s more fun to help others than to do something for yourself!”.

- **Read the passage “Car Alarm” and find out True, False or DS sentences.**

  **Car Alarm**
  Rachel was in her front yard *playing* with her younger brother, Mathew, when she heard a noise. She saw Megan, her four-year old neighbour, alone *standing* on the front seat of a moving car! A visitor had left his car door open and the keys in the *ignition*. Curious Megan climbed into the car, started the engine and accidentally put it into *gear*. *Shouting* for Mathew to get help, Rachel ran after the *rolling* car. “Don’t worry, I’ll get you,” she turned to Megan *crying*. Rachel *caught up* with the car, grabbed Megan and *yanked* her out. Then the car *smashed* into a tree. “At that moment I wasn’t scared,”—says Rachel. “I just wanted to get Megan out of the car. We all have to think of the other people, too!”

---

* **prowling** – moving around restlessly and stealthily, especially in search of or as if in search of prey, wander
* **catch up** – an act of catching someone up in a particular activity; overtake
Terror at Home

Kelly Denton was at home chatting on her friends. When the doorbell rang, her mum opened the door, and two criminals broke into the house. Kelly heard her mum screaming. She saw a man point a gun at her mother and demand money. The robbers didn’t see Kelly. She went back to her room and sent a message to her cyber* friends: “There are robbers in the house, call 911”. Then Kelly turned off the computer, snatched the mobile phone and hid herself into the closet. “From behind my clothes I dialed 911 and told them to send help” -she says. A minute later the robbers found Kelly’s mum and her three sisters. Suddenly they heard sirens approaching. The police had received Kelly’s call and her friend’s computer message. The robbers tried to flee, but they were caught and jailed*. Kelly’s family was safe.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Beginning of the story</th>
<th>Body of the story</th>
<th>Conclusion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PRACTISE AN INTERVIEW!**

4 PW. Work on the questions and practise an interview.

Aysel: What would you do in the situations given in task 3? Samir: _______.
Aysel: Which story did you like most of all and why? Samir: _______.
Aysel: Why do newspapers publish these stories? Samir: _______.
Aysel: Is it good to help others? Why? Samir: _______.

*cyber – information technology, and virtual reality; electronic, digital, wired, virtual, web, Internet, Net, online
*jail – send to prison, imprison, confine
5 PW. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate verbs from the box.

a) hearing  b) standing  c) saying  d) gathering  
 e) running  f) snatching  g) feeling  h) doing  i) playing

1. ... my mother tried very hard to help the poor in the neighbourhood.
2. While ... in the yard Jack fell down and broke his leg.
3. ... a noise Motilda turned to see her friends.
4. ... her mobile phone Kelly hid herself into the closet.
5. While ... in the garden the boys heard a sudden voice.
6. We have never seen our friends... harm to plants or animals.
7. ... “It’s more fun to help others than to do something for yourself!”  
   Mollie called her friends.
8. ... many hats Mollie distributed them to hospitals in Florida.

6 IW. Choose the correct variant.

1. Mother heard the child ... .
   a) crying  b) to cry  c) cried  d) cries  e) was crying
2. We saw the boys ... a car in the street yesterday.
   a) to drive  b) is driving  c) drives  d) driving  e) drove
3. The man noticed the robber ... the door and ... the room.
   a) opening, enter  b) open, enter  c) to open, enter  d) open, entering
4. The boys watched the children ... the birds’ nests.
   a) were destroying  b) destroyed  c) destroy  d) to destroy  e) destroys
5. Kate felt somebody ... in the room.
   a) is walking  b) walked  c) walks  d) to walk  e) walking

7 IW. Translate the expressions and build up sentences.

watching TV, visiting London, speaking fluently, playing happily, showing
the map, knowing foreign languages, crying loudly, gathering hats,
calling her friends, jailing the criminals, hearing a noise, while running
PW. Put the words in the correct order to make up a sentence.
1. saw/Kelly/the policemen/the room/entering
2. to/the girl/her teacher/my sister/talking/is
3. a strange/noise/Megan/in the yard/playing/heard
4. to/began/needy/Mollie/hats/children/selling
5. my sister/it/receiving/the letter/answered
6. English/the woman/our/is/standing/at the board/teacher

IW. Fill in the chart with the forms of the verbs.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
<th>Present Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to write</td>
<td>wrote</td>
<td>written</td>
<td>writing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to distribute</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to stand</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to jail</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to feel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to hear</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to smash</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to donate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to buy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IW. Imagine you’re a newspaper reporter. Choose a theme to write a story or prepare questions for an interview.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Self-Assessment</th>
<th>Level Reached</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description of Achievement</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I can:</strong></td>
<td>Good</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• ask/answer the questions on</td>
<td>Fair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the passages</td>
<td>Poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• discuss questions on</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>different situations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• make an interview on the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>topic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• give reasons for my opinions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can read and understand/find:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• different newspaper articles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• how to give comments on the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>questions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• build up sentences using key</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>words</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use Participle I in different</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contexts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• make an interview on a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newspaper story</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• make up sentences using</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participle I and Complex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Object</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 3. The Window to the World!

What you’ll learn:
• The use and practice of the -ing form
• Why TV is often called “The Window to the World”
• Why TV has the power to educate
• The good and bad sides of watching TV

Word File:

broaden [‘brɔːdn] (v) widen, expand, enlarge
The definition of this word can be expanded and broadened.
entertain [entə’teɪn] (v) interest and amuse people, in order to please them. He entertains us for hours with his stories and jokes.
escape [ɪs’keɪp] (v) run away, get away from a place where you have been kept as a prisoner.
He escaped from prison last Sunday.
foe [fou] (n) an enemy
There were not any enemies or foes along the way.
poison [‘pɔɪzn] 1. (n) a substance that causes death or harm
2. (v) harm or kill a person or an animal by giving them poison.
prohibit [prə’hɪbɪt] (v) forbid, sth/sb from doing sth, stop sth from being done or used especially by law.
relieve [rɪ’liːv] (v) 1. remove or reduce an unpleasant feeling or pain
2. make a problem less serious
3. make sth less boring

1 CW. Choose and write the words in the appropriate columns pronouncing them correctly.
How Does TV Affect Our Lives?

The main source of news for millions of people is television. People like TV news, because they can see everything with their own eyes. And that’s an important advantage, as we know “Seeing is believing”. Besides, it’s more difficult for politicians to speak in front of the cameras than on the pages of newspapers. I think watching TV is useful for everybody and it has an educational value.

Shaig

TV plays a very important role in our lives. It’s the main source of information and the window to the world which gives us an opportunity to “travel” all over the world, to “meet” different people and learn about their customs and traditions. It has the power to educate and broaden our minds. Relaxing after a day’s hard work one can escape from reality. There are a lot of intellectual programmes and talk shows, TV games, documentaries, concerts and theatre performances on TV. By watching TV one can gain a lot of knowledge.

Sevda

Although (even if) some programmes are not good, we prefer watching TV programmes to reading newspapers. But most programmes are made in good taste and with great professional skill. Some people argue that watching television is a waste of time. I think watching TV makes us lazier. We stay at home sitting in front of TV instead of having active life. We read less, think less and even talk less.

Tural

Violence on TV is another problem that worries people. Though television teaches us “how to shoot”, “how to rob”, “how to poison” and “how to kill” we are still watching TV spending most of our free time in front of it.

Leman

3 GW/PW. Discuss the given points of view. Give your opinion.

1. a) Television can have an educational purpose/effect.
   b) It may be the end of reading.

2. a) Watching television can relieve stress.
   b) It’s harmful for our eyes.

3. a) Watching TV has an educational value.
   b) Children shouldn’t sit up late.

4. a) TV is teenagers’ friend.
   b) It is considered a deadly foe.
Benefits of Television
- Television helps us to learn more about the world and to know and see many new things. Television can often present information to us in a more effective way than books can.
- Television has increased the popularity of sports and arts.
- Television entertains people. It’s an enjoyable way to relax.
- It helps us to see many new things.

Negative Effects of Television
- Television takes time away from activities such as reading, conversation and games.
- Television makes people violent. Sometimes children who watch violent television programmes are more likely to be violent themselves.
- Television is considered “a foe” for some people.

Remember and Compare!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>value</td>
<td>to value</td>
<td>talk</td>
<td>to talk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>to help</td>
<td>poison</td>
<td>to poison</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wish</td>
<td>to wish</td>
<td>waste</td>
<td>to waste</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>water</td>
<td>to water</td>
<td>show</td>
<td>to show</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 GW. Fill in the gaps with the suitable verbs/nouns (some of them can be used several times) from the box looking through the Remember and Compare box.

Sample: The Sheriff poisoned Robin Hood.

1. My friends offered me their ...
2. TV ... us to learn about the world.
3. We have many national ...
4. We always ... our national ornaments.
5. ... is a substance that can cause death.
6. Today one of my oldest ... came true.
7. We ... all students good luck!
8. Some insects are dangerous for their ...
9. Charitable people always ... the poor.
10. Now people walk and ... faster.
11. Don’t ... your time.
12. The teacher ... us the pictures of different places two days ago.
**Gerund**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gerund (Present / Past Continuous–Participle I)</th>
<th>Verbal Noun</th>
<th>Participle I</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The Drawing pictures is my hobby.</td>
<td>(the) drawing (the) drawings</td>
<td>The girl drawing a picture is my sister.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I am fond of drawing.</td>
<td>Ann’s feelings are always changeable.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Building houses is his profession.</td>
<td>Kate’s drawings are charming and valuable.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Relative Clause – Participle I**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gerund (Present / Past Continuous–Participle I)</th>
<th>Relative Clause – Participle I</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I am fond of watching TV.</td>
<td>The girl who is watching TV is my sister.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Students are fond of studying.</td>
<td>The students who are studying abroad will return with high quality certificates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My sister is interested in drawing pictures.</td>
<td>What’s the name of the person who you’re speaking to now?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>While driving to school yesterday, Joe had an accident.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Participle I**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gerund (Present / Past Continuous–Participle I)</th>
<th>Present / Past Continuous–Participle I</th>
<th>Relative Clause – Participle I</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They went on building a new bridge.</td>
<td>While building a new bridge they faced some problems.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Feeling tired she went to sleep.</td>
<td>Modern buildings are very high.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>She always shares her feelings with her friends.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. Look through the given Model and group the sentences writing them in correct columns. **Model:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gerund (as adverb of time and cause)</th>
<th>Participle I</th>
<th>Verbal Noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They went on building a new bridge.</td>
<td>While building a new bridge they faced some problems.</td>
<td>Modern buildings are very high.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Feeling tired she went to sleep.</td>
<td>She always shares her feelings with her friends.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The girl listening to the English CD is a very good student.
2. Reading English newspapers is difficult for beginners.
3. The students learning new grammar rules want to improve their knowledge.
4. The boys began listening to English songs.
5. Knowing English well he can translate articles without a dictionary.
6. The beginning of the concert was amazing.
7. Tural is fond of listening to music.
8. The building will be painted in a few days.
9. Scientists, politicians and diplomats communicate with each other using English.
10. It’s true that you can get a job at a foreign company attending international conferences, participating in forums and chat sessions.
7 GW/PW. Read the UI box and get more information about BBC from the website: www.bbcworldservice.com and share it with your classmates.

Useful Information

BBC – the British Broadcasting Corporation broadcasts radio and television programmes in the UK and abroad. The BBC is located in London, but has studios in many other parts of the UK and in other countries as well. The BBC has two television channels: BBC 1 and BBC 2. BBC 2 offers more serious programmes than BBC 1—documentaries and discussions, operas and concerts. BBC 1 programmes consist of plays and series, humour and sport, but they also show some interesting documentaries. BBC 1 is watched by a big number of viewers. The BBC receives its income from the Government. You can’t hear or see any commercials on BBC radio and television, because advertising on BBC programmes is prohibited. BBC began its first world’s public service in 1936. Now you can read and even watch BBC news through the Internet in 43 different languages.

PRACTISE AN INTERVIEW!

8 PW. Interview your partner using this plan and play a role.

Jamila: Which channels you watch and why
Zafar: _______.

Jamila: Which programmes you never watch
Zafar: _______.

Jamila: Which programmes you’re interested in
Zafar: _______.

Jamila: How many hours a day on average you watch TV
Zafar: _______.

Jamila: If you like commercials
Zafar: _______.

9 PW. Put the words in the correct columns and translate.

taste mind show talk play escape reality entertain television differ form source poison help waste educate life relax broad issue rest colour watch relieve value cheap dream watch prohibit broadcast

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Both</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trust</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10 GW/IW. Choose one of the tasks and work on the Project.

You have to prepare the news for tonight’s TV news broadcast:

- Make your own TV news programme. Imagine you are a news team.
- Design a news programme for teens.
- Prepare a news report about events in your school.
- Prepare a news report on a world event.
Lesson 4. The Eyes and Ears of the Society

What you’ll learn:

• How to identify your own goals
• The importance of choosing a profession
• What qualities a journalist should have
• What responsibilities a journalist should take

Word File:

axe [æks] (n) a tool to chop, a tool with a wooden handle and a heavy metal blade used for chopping wood.

He enjoys the outdoors, gardening and chopping wood with his axe.

ground [grænd] (v) mill, smash, rub or cause to rub together, reduce smth to small particles. Grind some black pepper over the salad.

intrude on/into/upon [ɪnˈtrud] (v) 1. go or be somewhere where you are not wanted or are not supposed to be.
2. put oneself deliberately into a place or situation where one is unwelcome or uninvited. He had no right to intrude on their lives.

mouthpiece ['maʊθpiːs] (n) 1. a person/a newspaper that informs the public about the opinions of a group of people 2. speaker, agent, representative, a person or organization that speaks on behalf of an organization.
3. a part of a telephone, a telephone receiver.

partial ['pɑːʃəl] (adj) not complete, incomplete, limited, one-sided ant: impartial. We got only partial answers to the questions we had.

proof [pruːf] (n) verification, information document, etc. witness, evidence or argument establishing a fact that is true.

rigorous ['rɪɡərəs] (adj) 1. severe, strict, extremely careful, done carefully.
2. demanding that particular rules, processes are strictly followed.

spout [spaut] (v) speak a lot about smth, repeat smth in a boring way.

1 CW. Which word/words in each line is/are different from the others for its/their lexical meaning?

1. proof newspaper magazine journal shop
2. journalist teacher axe lawyer lower
3. accurate rigorous impartial mouthpiece partial
4. food entertain intrude grind spout
CW. Think and say who can have these qualities looking through the UI box.

- lively mind
- good listener
- impartial
- flexible
- creative
- self-confident
- vigilant*
- accurate
- common sense
- open minded

Useful Information

There are many trustworthy (devoted/reliable) professions in the world. Most people prefer to be doctors and teachers, others prefer to be lawyers and judges, etc. The other list of professions are businessmen, leaders, journalists, politicians, etc. Some people think that journalists are given too much freedom. They often intrude into people’s private lives. They follow celebrities and print sensational stories about them which are mostly untrue or half-true.

GW. Read the ideas by these most trusted people and give your comments.

A good teacher is like a candle, it consumes* itself to light the way for others!
(Mustafa Kemal Ataturk)

“I qualified when I was twenty-three years old. I had every intention of working until I was sixty five, so I’ve got a real interest in making sure that my patients think I’m trustworthy. You do that by the way you behave towards people.”
(Dr. David Bailey)

“We don’t have an axe to grind. Our business is doing research in teaching. In good faith, we try and produce things that are of value to society in general.”
(Prof. Justin Lewis, university professor)

Teachers are gardeners! “In teaching you cannot see the fruit of a day’s work. It is invisible* and remains so, maybe for many years.”
(Jacques Barzun)

*vigilant – keeping careful watch for possible danger or difficulties; awake
*consume – kill, demolish, annihilate, eliminate
*invisible – unseen
4 PW. Complete the dialogue with your own ideas and perform it.

Asim: I’m concerned (worried, anxious) we can’t trust the news that we have read these days.
Mehriban: Hmm. Why not?
Asim: Because journalists have an axe to grind.
Asim: I think it’s very rare to get a truly impartial journalist.
Mehriban: Why should a journalist be partial or impartial?
Surely that’s the job of a journalist.
Asim: I agree with you. I’m just saying I think there are some journalists who can’t be trusted. They aren’t there to tell the truth, they are there to sell newspapers or they have an axe to grind.
Mehriban: Yeah, it’s a job. They are always paid and they are the mouthpiece for whoever is paying them.
Asim: But, it’s not the job of a journalist to be rigorous. I mean if anybody comes up with a piece of nonsense, or just whatever, you know, a piece of received information that they’re spouting, isn’t the job of a journalist to get to the bottom of that and say: what do you really mean by that, have you got proof of it, what are your sources? That’s their job, surely?
Mehriban: ____________________.

5 PW. Give comments on the statements.
1. Journalists have an axe to grind.
2. Most journalists are truly impartial (not partial/taking sides).
3. Some journalists are trusted by the public
4. Some journalists can’t be trusted.
5. It’s the job of a journalist to be rigorous.
6. Journalists want the truth.
7. A journalist’s job is to get proof and ask for evidence.

6 GW. Group the words and complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>trust</td>
<td>impartial</td>
<td>trust</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*debatable – arguable, disputable
*nonsense – nothing
**Remember!**

An idiom – is a combination or a group of words with a special meaning that is different from the individual words. Sometimes the meaning is easy to understand, sometimes it’s difficult to understand from the individual words. The English language is rich in idioms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idioms</th>
<th>Meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>to have an axe to grind</code></td>
<td>to have private reasons for being involved in smth or for arguing for a particular cause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>to get to the bottom of smth</code></td>
<td>to find out the real cause of smth, especially smth unpleasant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>to feed smb</code></td>
<td>to give advice/information to smb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>to get on smb’s nerves</code></td>
<td>to make smb annoyed, angry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>to keep an eye on</code></td>
<td>to watch or look after smb/smth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>to get out of hand</code></td>
<td>to lose control of things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>see eye to eye</code></td>
<td>to agree with someone/to be in full agreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>on the tip of the tongue</code></td>
<td>not remembering smth at the moment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>fish out of water</code></td>
<td>a person who seems out of place or uncomfortable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>butterflies in your stomach</code></td>
<td>you’re nervous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>in the pink</code></td>
<td>in good health or good condition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>a big fish</code></td>
<td>important or powerful person in a group or organization</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8 PW. Express your opinions on the following statements giving your comments. Then compare them.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agree</th>
<th>Disagree</th>
<th>Or</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

♦ Journalists are more important than lawyers.
♦ A newspaper’s main role is entertaining people.
♦ Newspapers are of vital importance in modern society.
♦ The press should be impartial and report events objectively.
♦ Newspapers not only inform, but also educate and entertain.
♦ “Media” are defined as a combination of newspapers, magazines, radio and TV.
♦ Journalists should report quickly and accurately what they have found out.
♦ Newspapers which rely on the sensational facts, gain the respect of their readers.
♦ There shouldn’t be special laws for journalists, as they are only the representatives of everyone else in society.
♦ News (news articles/programmes) influences (influence) on people.

9 GW. Match the expressions with their meanings and use them in a situation.

1. Never mind!
2. to hang on
3. to make up your mind
4. to have an axe to grind
5. it is a piece of cake
6. to get on sb’s nerves
7. to keep your shirt on

a) easy
b) stay calm
c) Ok, no problem!
d) to make a decision
e) to wait a minute
f) to have private reasons for being involved in smth
g) makes somebody angry

10 IW. Make comments on the idioms saying their equivalents in Azerbaijani.

1. Jane has a good head for figures. Why don’t you ask her to help you with the budget?
2. We’re all ears. Do tell us what happened.
3. Lend me an ear and I’ll sing you a song!
4. Would you give me a hand with this box? I can’t lift it on my own.
5. It’s really hard to see eye to eye with her, whatever I say, she criticizes.
6. Joanna always gets butterflies in her stomach before job interviews. I told her she had to relax.
7. Would you keep an eye on the milk while I’m out, please? I’ll be back in a minute and I hate when it boils over. (to spill)
PRACTISE AN INTERVIEW!

11 PW. Interview your partner and perform. Write an interview about our journalists who have democratic ideas. (We have such courageous journalists as Ganira Pashayeva, Mir Shahin and others)

Tunar: Do you think the life of a journalist is easy? Nuray: ______.
Tunar: What kind of responsibilities must a journalist take? Nuray: ______.
Tunar: Which qualities are important for a journalist? Nuray: ______.
Tunar: Are journalists trusted by the public? Nuray: ______.
Tunar: Who are these personalities? Nuray: ______.
Tunar: Why are these journalists heroes? Nuray: ______.
Tunar: What other patriot journalists do you know? Nuray: ______.

12 PW. Match and use them in sentences of your own.

1. to grind  2. to spout  3. lawyer  4. proof  5. rigorous  6. partial  7. mouthpiece

a) not complete  b) document that shows that smth is true  c) a person/a newspaper that informs the public about people’s ideas  d) to repeat smth in a boring way  e) have private reasons to argue and smash  f) strict  g) a person in a court of law who has the authority to make legal decisions

13 IW. Project Work. Write a paragraph:

- What profession would you like to choose? Why?
- Do you think you have the necessary qualities for that profession?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Self-Assessment</th>
<th>Activities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>remember everything about</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>have no problems with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think I need some more practice in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think I need a lot more practice with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can’t remember anything about</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The pages of a newspaper keep everyone in touch with local, national, government, and world events for a few coins a day. Newspapers provide us with more details about events than television news programmes have time for, and stories in the paper cover a wide range of topics. In addition to news, there is information about politics, the arts, sports, fashion, business, technology, science and environment. Newspapers also contain opinions or points of view, some newspapers support a political party and others try to remain independent.

Local newspapers concentrate on events in one city or neighbourhood. National newspapers are sold countrywide and cover events at home and abroad. A big newspaper has a large staff of editors, reporters, journalists, feature writers, cartoonists, photographers, typesetters, printers and many others who work through the night to deliver the latest news each morning. Each newspaper has a unique format - a special type style and general layout* that sets it apart from others on the newsstand. Big headlines and photographs of important events feature on the front page which carry the news that makes history.

1. **Read and complete the chart with nouns from the passage.**

   The pages of a newspaper keep everyone in touch with local, national, government, and world events for a few coins a day. Newspapers provide us with more details about events than television news programmes have time for, and stories in the paper cover a wide range of topics. In addition to news, there is information about politics, the arts, sports, fashion, business, technology, science and environment. Newspapers also contain opinions or points of view, some newspapers support a political party and others try to remain independent. Local newspapers concentrate on events in one city or neighbourhood.

   National newspapers are sold countrywide and cover events at home and abroad. A big newspaper has a large staff of editors, reporters, journalists, feature writers, cartoonists, photographers, typesetters, printers and many others who work through the night to deliver the latest news each morning. Each newspaper has a unique format - a special type style and general layout* that sets it apart from others on the newsstand. Big headlines and photographs of important events feature on the front page which carry the news that makes history.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>er/or</th>
<th>ist</th>
<th>hood</th>
<th>tion/sion</th>
<th>ment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **Sort the nouns out filling in the table according to task 1 above.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple</th>
<th>Derivative</th>
<th>Compound</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Fill in the gaps with the suitable verbs from the box. Give comments comparing Participle I and the Gerund.**

   a) listening  b) happening  c) entertaining  d) learning  e) carrying  
   f) watching  g) sitting  h) educating  i) supporting  j) looking

1. ... political parties some newspapers contain different ideas.
2. ... on the plane and ... at the clouds has always relaxed me.
3. ... cartoons on TV is my favourite hobby.
4. My sister enjoys ... Greek.
5. ... the newspapers is the duty of a postman.
6. ... and ... people newspapers inform us about a lot of things.
7. By ... to news programmes we can get information on the events ... in our country and abroad.

*layout – the way in which the parts of something are arranged or laid out; plan
1. ... always goes to conferences and makes presentations on scientific issues.
2. ... travels to different countries and speaks a lot of foreign languages.
3. A very successful. ... can become a president.
4. ... helps with office work. She works well on computers.
5. ... can translate books from one language into another.

Vocabulary Map

- proof
- smash
- broadcast
- something
- siren
- poison
- robbery
- that
- partial
- foe
- vigilant
- spout
- by
- violently
- escape
- commercial
- entertain
- an
- for
- gear
- flee
- themselves
- criminal
- or
- distribute
- relieve
- should
- to
- ignition
- victim
- loudly
- jail

3. Think and sort out the words according to the parts of speech.

4. Fill in the gaps with the words from the box.

A) a secretary  B) a diplomat  C) a translator  D) a politician  E) a scientist

1. ... always goes to conferences and makes presentations on scientific issues.
2. ... travels to different countries and speaks a lot of foreign languages.
3. A very successful. ... can become a president.
4. ... helps with office work. She works well on computers.
5. ... can translate books from one language into another.
5 Translate the sentences into your own language.
1. Television has changed our life today.
2. Watching television can help us avoid stress.
3. Journalists intruding on people’s private lives chase celebrities and print sensational stories.
4. Taking photos in special moments is a journalist’s job.
5. Children like watching cartoons on TV.
6. Telling the truth, journalists “have an axe to grind”.
7. While climbing the mountain she fell down and broke her leg.

6 Find out the suitable meanings in the idioms giving clear comments.

1. I’m over the hill.
   a) I have done the most difficult part of a task.
   b) I found myself at a crossroads.
   c) My career started to go downhill.
   d) I can’t do something well enough, because I’m too old.

2. Do gooder!
   a) a person who is lazy
   b) a person who is passive
   c) a person who works hard
   d) a person who tries to help people

3. You’ll go far.
   a) You have lost your career.
   b) You have a great future ahead of you!
   c) You can’t take a risk and start your own firm.
   d) You quickly reached the peak of your profession.

4. Keep your shirt on!
   a) Take a risk!
   b) Stay calm!
   c) It’s not a secret!
   d) Make a noise!

5. He shone at Math from an early age!
   a) He was good at Math!
   b) He had a great future.
   c) He was bad at Math.
   d) He didn’t seem to be smart.

6. The solution came to me in a flash of inspiration.
   a) A clever idea that came suddenly.
   b) I couldn’t start the work.
   c) I can’t take a risk.
   d) It was a great chance.

7 Say if you agree or disagree. Write your arguments.
1. People shouldn’t waste time watching TV.
2. Television is a convenient source of information.
3. Television plays an important role in modern life.
4. Show programmes give the young wrong ideas about life.
5. Television keeps people informed about current events.
6. By dominating our lives television is a cheap source of entertainment.
7. Television allows people to follow the developments in science and politics.
Lesson 1. Eyes in the Sky

What you’ll learn:
• What Closed-Circuit Television (CCTV) cameras are
• Where we usually find CCTV cameras
• What CCTV cameras are used for
• What the importance and the main role of cameras are

Word File:
cookies [ˈkukɪz] (n) a packet of data sent by an internet server to a browser.
detect [dɪˈtekt] (v) find out, display, discover or identify the presence or existence of.
Cancer may soon be detected in its earliest stages.
entire [ɛnˈtaɪə] (adj) complete, total, whole, with no part left out.
My plans are to travel the entire world.
install [ɪnstɔːl] (v) put, set, place, locate.
We’re planning to install a new shower.
investigate [ɪnˈvestɪɡet] (v) look/examine into, explore, study, research, conduct an investigation.
The police are investigating the situation.
record [rɪˈkɔːd] (v) register, write down, make notes, set down in writing for later reference, especially officially.
We were asked to keep a diary and record everything we ate or drank.
surveillance [soʊˈvɜːləns] (n) the act of carefully watching a person suspected of a crime or a place where a crime may be committed.
tag [tæɡ] (n) a label/sticker attached to someone or sth for the purpose of identification or to give other information; label, badge, sticker.
While you’re untying, remove any labels or tags that are still attached.

IW. Group the words according to the stressed syllable: [●]
surveillance tag cookies shoplifter headline pavement install detect cartoonist entire potential investigate newsstand record camera
2 PW. Look and speak about these things.

**Model:** We can see cameras everywhere, in the streets, at the top of the buildings, in the flats, in the shops, in the cars, etc. Every time we go into a shop, or use a cash machine, or travel on public transport a camera records our actions.

---

**REMEMBER!**

**Cameras** – are there to film dangerous or illegal behaviour. These cameras don’t just watch criminals, they watch all of us, almost all the time.

---

**PRACTISE AN INTERVIEW!**

3 PW. Listen to the dialogue and perform it. Pay attention to -ing forms.

**Aydan:** Hello, Shahin!

**Shahin:** Hi, Aydan! Where are you going?

**Aydan:** I’ve lost the books that I took from our school library.

**Shahin:** Oh, sorry to hear that. But what will you do now? How can I help you? Think a little where you could have put them.

**Aydan:** I think I put them on the pavement when I tried to help an old woman cross the street.

**Shahin:** Let’s go there and have a look then. Maybe we can find them.

**Aydan:** Oh, thank you, nowadays there are watching cameras everywhere and they record everything, so I’m sure there will be no problem to find them.

**Shahin:** Oh, yes, you’re right! We have such a camera at our house which is recording everything. I’ll go there with you!

4 PW. Look through the “Compare and Remember” box and write more sentences comparing them.

### COMPARE AND REMEMBER!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gerund</th>
<th>Present Continuous</th>
<th>Relative Clause</th>
<th>Participle I</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I like watching TV.</td>
<td>The girl is watching TV now.</td>
<td>The girl who is watching TV is my sister.</td>
<td>The girl watching TV is my sister.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She is fond of reading stories.</td>
<td>We are solving some social problems now.</td>
<td>What’s the name of the person who you’re speaking to now?</td>
<td>Writing articles for a local newspaper she gained experience as a journalist.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
GW. Exchange your ideas on these questions paying attention to the use of words with -ing. (Adapted from a British newspaper)

- What are Closed-Circuit Television (CCTV) cameras?
- Where do we usually find CCTV cameras?
- What are CCTV cameras used for?
- Where are they mostly placed?

A) The first CCTV cameras appeared in Britain in 1953, and by the 1960s there were a few cameras in major streets of London. Today, there are more than four million CCTV cameras across the country. CCTV cameras are used all over the world. With new software, they can automatically recognize the faces of known criminals, and a new kind of CCTV cameras in the Netherlands are good at detecting angry voices and automatically warning the police of the trouble.

B) The amount of surveillance in towns and cities is increasing. Some goods have RFID (Radio Frequency Identification) tags attached to them in shops now. When you pick up one of these items, the RFID tag sends a radio message to a CCTV camera and the camera starts filming you. Shops say this technology helps to catch shoplifters (a person who steals smth from shops; booster, lifter).

C) Every time you make or receive a call on your mobile phone, the phone company knows the number of the phone you’re calling and how long the call lasts. The police using this information often investigate serious crimes.

D) What about satellites? Anybody with a computer can download Google Earth and get satellite photos of the entire world. And governments use more powerful satellites that are watching their citizens.

E) Using your computer to visit websites, you probably send and receive cookies (a packet of data sent by an internet server to a browser) without realizing it. Cookies transfer information from your computer to the website and, in the theory, could record which websites you visit. Or perhaps somebody has secretly installed programmes on your computer. These record every letter that you type on the keyboard: your passwords, e-mails, bank account numbers and more.

GW/PW. Match the headings with the paragraphs A–E above. There is one extra heading you don’t need. Retell their content.

1. Eyes in the Sky
2. What are CCTV Cameras for?
3. Internet Surveillance
4. They Know Who You’re Calling
5. Safety on the Streets
6. Watching Shoppers
1. Surveillance makes people decide not to commit crime.
2. If you don’t do anything wrong, then you have nothing to fear from surveillance.
3. Surveillance makes everybody feel guilty.
4. Personal privacy is more important than catching criminals.
5. The police can catch more criminals with the help of surveillance.
6. We can solve social problems.
7. Public safety is more important than personal privacy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Arguments for surveillance</th>
<th>Arguments against surveillance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. Choose the correct answer. Make your own quiz looking through the model.

1. With new software CCTV cameras can automatically … the faces of unknown criminals.
   a) solve    b) make    c) recognize    d) use

2. The amount of surveillance in cities and towns … nowadays.
   a) is increasing    b) is using    c) is playing    d) is catching

3. The police using the information from the CCTV cameras … serious crimes.
   1. catch    2. save    3. investigate    4. record
   a) 1, 2    b) 1, 3    c) 3, 4    d) 2, 3

4. CCTV cameras receive a message from RFID tags when …
   a) a shoplifter comes into the shop
   b) a shoplifter steals an item
   c) somebody lifts up an item that has got a tag
   d) the camera starts filming

5. Choose the incorrect variant.
   Surveillance helps to catch …
   a) shop assistants    b) shoplifters    c) thieves    d) criminals

9. Find the opposites of these words and build up sentences.
   
   dangerous – illegal – important –
   useful – angry – guilty –
   public – social – serious –
   harmful – personal – healthy –
**10 PW. Find the words from the texts which mean:** *(See task 5.)*
1. a machine which gives you money when you type in your code
2. secret words that allow you to enter *(a place or a website)*
3. a label which you attach to/on an item *(e. g. a suitcase)*
4. transfer from the Internet to your computer
5. inhabitants of a state or nation
6. people who steal from shops
7. computer programmes
8. against the law
9. investigate
10. shoplifter

**11 IW. Put the words in correct columns and use them in sentences.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>visit</td>
<td>guilty</td>
<td>visit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surveillance</td>
<td></td>
<td>install</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**12 IW. Create a paragraph on the topic and give reasons for your opinion:**
"I think the increase in surveillance in our society is good/bad".

**Self-Assessment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description of Achievement</th>
<th>Excellent</th>
<th>Good</th>
<th>Fair</th>
<th>Poor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I can read and understand:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• articles/passages about CCTV cameras</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• match the headings with the paragraphs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I can:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• ask and answer questions on cameras</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• compare arguments for/against surveillance</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• give reasons for my opinions/thoughts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I can:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• build up sentences using the key words</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• write a paragraph on cameras and satellites expressing my ideas</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 2. The Masters of Our Own Fate

What you’ll learn:
• Some of the inventions/discoveries that exist
• Who created, invented these inventions
• Why these inventions are used

REMEMBER!
“Those that know, do! Those that understand, teach!” (Aristotle)

Word File:
evolve [ɪˈvɔlv] (v) 1. expand, develop gradually, grow, progress, advance, spread, change from a simple to a more complex form. The company has evolved into a major chemical manufacturer.
2. give off (gas or heat).
fascinating [ˈfæsɪnətɪŋ] (adj) charming, extremely interesting, glamorous, lovely. Fascinating facts.
fate [feɪt] 1. (n) destiny, chance, luck, fortune. Fate decided his course for him.
2. (v) be destined to happen, turn out, or act in a particular way. The regime was fated to end badly.
light bulb [ˈlaɪt bʌlb] (n) bulb, electric light, a glass bulb inserted into a lamp. The watchman switched on an electric light bulb.
painkiller [ˈpeɪnkɪlə] (n) a drug or medicine for relieving pain, pain reliever. Painkillers reduce pain and swelling.
supersonic [ˈsjuːpəsɔnɪk] (adj) involving or denoting a speed greater than that of sound. ultrasonic, hypersonic, faster-than-sound.
transistorize [trænˈzɪstəraɪz] (v) design or make with transistors rather than vacuum tubes. A transistorized tape recorder.

1 IW. Practise the words with the sound and find the ones with different sound in each line:

[ ai ] light bulb transplantize
[ ei ] fate fascinating

[ eɪ ] alley painkiller fate debate create
[ aɪ ] transistorize live light bulb private
[ ɔ ] evolve courage crop front cotton
[ juː ] supersonic tune proof musical use
2. GW. Find the information and make a presentation about these objects.

Model: The computer designed by an Englishman Charles Babbage is used in every house, every office, etc. The watch made by Kutbi, a renowned watchmaker of his time, plays a great role in our life nowadays. X-rays* system-discovered by William Roentgen, a German scientist is used for diagnosis of different illnesses nowadays. W. Roentgen received the first Nobel Prize for his discovery in 1901.

3. PW. Read the UI box and share your ideas on supersonic age.

Useful Information

We live in the fascinating and challenging world of science. It’s the world that has affected our lives. It is part of the way we eat and travel, the homes we live in and the clothes we wear, how we become ill and how medicine can make us better. Science has given us fantastic means of communication and exploration. Because in the future science will be around us, tomorrow’s adults must start learning today to be ready to take their places in this computerized, transistorized, antibiotic, nuclear, supersonic age! And all the things mankind invented, created, designed are used now.

GRAMMAR SPOT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
<th>Relative Clause</th>
<th>Participle II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>People design buildings.</em></td>
<td><em>Buildings are designed by people.</em></td>
<td><em>Buildings that are designed by people are charming.</em></td>
<td><em>Buildings designed by people are charming and attractive.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Samuel Fox invented a modern umbrella.</em></td>
<td><em>A modern umbrella was invented by Samuel Fox.</em></td>
<td><em>A modern umbrella that was invented by Samuel Fox protects people from heat and rain.</em></td>
<td><em>A modern umbrella invented by Samuel Fox protects people from heat and rain.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*X-ray(s) – Ro(e)ntgen rays*
4 GW. Read the texts inserting the verbs from the box and paying attention to the usage of Past Participle. *(Particle II)*

- **Penicillin** ... (1) by Alexander Fleming is used for cold nowadays. Although Alexander invented it, he didn’t know how to make it into medicine. It was first ... (2) into medicine ten years later, by an Australian scientist Howard Florey.

- **The thermometer** ... (3) to take the temperature of the human body ... (4) in their present form after centuries of scientific investigation. First it was the work of Sanctorius, an Italian professor of medicine *(16th cent.)* that led to a temperature scale.

- **Text-messaging** ... (5) by the Finnish company Nokia helped Finnish teenagers, who were very shy. They found it easier to text their friends than to phone them.

- **The light bulb** ... (6) by an American inventor Thomas Alva Ferdinand Edison was the most famous achievement and changed the world completely.

- The drug **Aspirin** ... (7) by Felix Hofman is used as a **painkiller** all over the world. The first aspirin was ... (8) to Felix’s father for his arthritis. In 1969 aspirin was ... (9) to the Moon by the Apollo astronauts.

5 PW. Fill in the chart according to the texts above.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aspirin</th>
<th>Light bulb</th>
<th>Text messaging</th>
<th>Computer</th>
<th>Penicillin</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Why do we need it?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When was it invented?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Who invented it?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which of them was taken to the Moon?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The place which is situated in the Highlands attracts many tourists.
The lands that were discovered by Columbus were rich in gold.
The two banks which were connected by a bridge were dangerous.
Mark Twain who was the best known American writer and humorist described the life on the Mississippi.
The first crossword which was compiled* by Arthur Wynne is a magic game.
The first reflecting telescope which was built by Isaac Newton was a useful invention.

1. A person who makes cartoons ...
2. Something that is very fast of its kind ...
3. A person who makes things for the first time ...
4. A person whose job is concerned with politics ...
5. Something that is used to take the temperature ...
6. Something that is used as a painkiller ...

*compile – produce smth, especially a list, report, or book by assembling information collected from other sources; make up, make, compose
PW/GW. Choose the correct alternatives paying attention to the usage of Participle I and Participle II.

1. The photos taking/taken at the school show haven’t come out.
2. The cartoon showing/shown on TV was very interesting for adults, too.
3. A. Fleming made a big change in medicine invent/invented the penicillin.
4. The first motor car created/creating by Karl Benz was made in 1885.
5. The first cartoon Mickey Mouse produced/producing by the most popular cartoonist W. Disney was an *instant hit.
6. “Khamsa” written/writing by the most famous Azerbaijani poet Nizami Ganjavi is read and performed with great interest.
7. Oh, look! The lady translating/translated the news programme is charming.
8. The relationships creating/created by our government are really sustainable*.
9. The boy compiling/compiled interesting crosswords is our classmate.
10. Looking/looked through the passage the students filled in the gaps with the appropriate words from the box.

PW/GW. Choose the right suffix to make nouns and complete the chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>invent</th>
<th>create</th>
<th>produce</th>
<th>write</th>
<th>educate</th>
<th>teach</th>
<th>cartoon</th>
<th>humour</th>
<th>science</th>
<th>journal</th>
<th>innovate</th>
<th>art</th>
<th>compose</th>
<th>act</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- or</td>
<td>- er</td>
<td>- ist</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• invent+or</td>
<td>• teach+er</td>
<td>• art+ist</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• •</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• •</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• •</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• •</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GW. Make questions about these inventions and find logical answers. Try to make a crossword as well.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Phone</th>
<th>Aspirin</th>
<th>*Camera</th>
<th>Umbrella</th>
<th>TV</th>
<th>Cartoon</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Questions</td>
<td>Who... by/make?</td>
<td>When/invent?</td>
<td>Where/put?</td>
<td>What... for/to use?</td>
<td>Who/ by?</td>
<td>Who..by/create?</td>
<td>What... for/use?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*instant hit – immediate success/prosper, blow, thrive
*sustainable – able to be maintained at a certain rate or level; able to be upheld or defended
Lesson 3. The Road to Success

What you’ll learn:
- How we can define a genius*
- If people are born geniuses or they become geniuses through hard work
- How a person can become successful!

REMEMBER!
- Be a good master and a good teacher!
- A journey of a thousand miles begins with a single step!
- It’s not always what you teach but how you teach it!

(Lao Tzu, Chinese philosopher)

Word File:

arouse [əˈraʊz] (v) call, produce, evoke or awaken someone from sleep, wake up. She was aroused by the telephone call a few minutes ago.
constitute [ˈkɒnstrɪtjuːt] (v) set up, found, institute, issue, publish, establish by law. Single parents constitute a great proportion of the poor.
dismiss [dɪsˈmɪs] (v) order or allow to leave, send away, release, part with. She dismissed the taxi at the corner of the road.
gravity [ˈgrævɪti] (n) balance, attraction, fixation, heaviness. Newton’s laws of gravity apply with minor modifications to take the general theory of relativity into account.
lifetime [ˈlaɪftaɪm] (n) the duration of life. A reward for a lifetime’s work.
motion [ˈməʊʃən] (n) 1. the action or process of moving or being moved, movement, rise and fall, shifting, transit, course.
2. a formal proposal, recommendation, suggestion.
put forward [put ‘fɔːwərd] (v) push, move out, pull out, propose, nominate.
track [træk] (v) watch, look after, follow the course of someone or smth, typically in order to find them or note their location at various points.

1 IW. Practise the words with the same sounds.

[ʌ] lifetime combine mind tribe
dɪ] either weather there though
[ɪ] dismiss discrete diplomacy typical
dɪs] track matter gravity pattern

*genius – a person who is exceptionally intelligent or creative, either generally or in some particular respect; brilliant person, gifted person
2 GW. Fill in the KWL table about scientists / inventors.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inventors</th>
<th>K</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>L</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lotfi Zadeh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thomas Alva Edison</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaac Newton</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 GW. Read and discuss the questions giving comments.
• How can a person become successful?  • How can he/she manage to do it?
• What makes a person so special?            • How do people become geniuses?

Famous Inventors

- **Isaac Newton (1642-1727)** was a world-famous physicist, mathematician and natural philosopher. **Isaac Newton** discovered many laws and scientific theories which helped to **shape** the **study** of physics. In 1665 he **discovered** the **law of gravity** by watching an apple fall from a tree. He decided to **put forward** other laws about **motion** that explain how objects move on the Earth and in the sky. He made discoveries in optics and built the first reflecting telescope. Much of modern science is based on his ideas. He also **aroused** a **new interest** in vision and **colour** and influenced **descriptive** writing throughout the 18th century. He **dismissed** poetry as an unimportant and **irrelevant (unnecessary)** activity. He had a great **influence** on the writers of the time and **caused** them to admire reasons in both Man and God. He said: “I’m certain that any mind working on a problem continuously will be prepared for the sudden answer.”

- **Thomas Alva Edison (1847-1931)** He didn’t go to school, but he **loved** reading and his mom taught him at home. Thomas was born as an inventor and during his **lifetime** he invented more than a thousand things such as microphone, the **record** player, and equipment for the cinema, the telegraph, and the **telephone**. However, his most famous invention is the electric light bulb. Today we can definitely say that his invention is the biggest achievement ever. The electric light has had such a big **influence** on people’s everyday **lives** that it has completely **changed** the world. By the time he was seventy Edison’s achievements had made him one of the best known people in America.

4 GW. Choose and write the words in italics in the text in correct columns.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Both</th>
<th>None</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRACTISE AN INTERVIEW!

5 PW. Read and complete the UI box. Then act out the dialogue.

Useful Information

Sometimes we think that a creative idea suddenly comes into our heads/minds from nowhere. This is not usually the case—it comes because we are ready to receive it. Every person is a genius in their own way. Some people are good at remembering what they have read, others are good at remembering things through listening. Some people are good at Maths, Languages, History, some are good at sports and some are good at Music or Painting, etc. So, all these qualities are called ... . And those who have such qualities are called ... people.

Sona: What associations come to your mind when you hear the word “talent”?
Elnur: I think talent is a gift that God gives to some people.
Sona: And what’s the difference between a talent and talented?
Elnur: As a part of speech talent is a noun, but talented is an adjective that means a person who has talent, ability, capability and creativity as Lotfi Zadeh.
Sona: Now I understand. Thank you for clear explanation, indeed.
Elnur: You are welcome, Sona. You know, I always feel pride with such talented people as Lotfi Zadeh, Kerim Kerimov and other famous Azerbaijanis.

6 PW. Talk about your abilities discussing the cards.

Student’s Card 1
Ask your friend if he/she can do things well.
Tell him/her what you can do well.
Remember to say:
• what you can do well
• what you can invent, design, create, achieve
• about your new ideas/inventions/achievements

Student’s Card 2
Listen to your friend and answer his/her questions.
Ask him/her if he/she can do things that you can do well.
Remember to ask:
• about his/her skills/abilities/creativity
• about his/her ambitions
• if he/she can be a successful person
Lotfi Zadeh is the Scientific Editor or Member of Editorial Board of 54 scientific journals in the fields of Soft Computing and **Fuzzy Logic**. Lotfi Zadeh is one of the most referenced scientific authors in the world. He is the one who made our lives lighter, easier. So, thanks to his inventions people live a delightful life. Just in 1990-2000 there were more than 36000 references made with regard of his articles and monographs. Lotfi Zadeh is the member of a big number of foreign Academies of Sciences. He has received a lot of awards and medals from various honourary societies. He is the Honoured Doctor of many foreign states and public organizations. Lotfi Zadeh has developed 5 fundamental scientific theories. He founded the **Zadeh Institute for Information Technology (ZIFIT)** in Berkley, USA. The famous State Space, theories of control and **tracking** of dynamic systems developed by Lotfi Zadeh constitute the basis of modern science of control. Based on these theories **National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA)** designs, develops and implements various purpose control systems. The most popular theory of Lotfi Zadeh is the Fuzzy Logic Theory.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities by scientists</th>
<th>Lotfi Zadeh</th>
<th>Edison</th>
<th>Newton</th>
<th>None</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>invented microphone, the record player, etc.</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is the most referenced scientific author in the world</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aroused a new interest in vision and colour</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is honoured Doctor of several foreign states</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discovered the laws of gravity</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>created the electric light bulb</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invented the car</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>developed 5 main scientific theories</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>composed a lot of songs</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>built the first reflecting telescope</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caused writers to admire both Man and God</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dismissed poetry as an unimportant activity</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>created the <strong>Fuzzy Logic</strong> Theory</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>changed the world</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>built and opened a number of schools</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>was made the president of the Royal Society</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Fuzzy Logic – Logic which is difficult to perceive clearly or understand and explain precisely; argumentation which is indistinct or vague-unclear, distorted, unfocused*
8. Complete the biography using information from the passages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Lotfi Zadeh</th>
<th>Newton</th>
<th>Edison</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date of Birth</td>
<td>February 4, 1921</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citizenship</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birthplace</td>
<td>Azerbaijan, Baku</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Characteristic features</td>
<td>Fuzzy Logic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invention</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interests</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Awards</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. Write a paragraph to describe your strongest ability. Try to demonstrate your ability and give explanation.

10. Write an essay choosing one of the headings/sayings below:
- Necessity is the Mother of Invention.
- All that Glitters is not Gold.
- The Road to Hell is paved with good inventions.

11. Create a project. Make a list – collage of your favourite inventors with photos and illustrations.

| Self-Assessment |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| Criteria        | Activities      |
| I remember everything about | the word file and the meanings of the words |
| I have no problems with | the new words and their meanings, the discoveries and inventions of some inventors or scientists, etc. |
| I think I need some more practice in | writing an essay about discoveries |
| I think I need a lot more practice in | making an Interview about the ambitions of the inventors/scientists |
| I can’t remember anything about |  |
We all know that Bill Gates is the boss of Microsoft, the best – known computer software company. Bill Gates is one of the richest men in the world. When Bill was a little boy he loved reading, especially books which contained facts. Before he was nine years old, he read every book of the World Encyclopedia. When he was eleven he went to a private secondary school called Lakeside School. He became interested in computer programming, and he wrote his first computer programme when he was only thirteen. While studying at the University of Harvard he developed BASIC – a language used for writing computer programmes. In 1975 he also started a company called Microsoft with his friend Paul Allen. However, he soon decided that Microsoft was more important than his university studies and a year later, he left Harvard to spend all his time in his new company. Bill and Paul believed that there would be a computer in every home, and in every office, everyone would have their own computer one day. So they immediately began to develop software for personal computers. Nowadays, about 85 per cent of all computers use Microsoft programmes. Today Gates is a billionaire, but he doesn’t live the life of a rich man, even preferring until recently to fly economy class and eat in the Microsoft office cafeteria. In fact, he believes in the well-known saying: you can’t take it with you. He intends to get rid of (remove, do away with, extinguish) all his money before he dies and to give it away! With his wife Gates has set up a charitable organization called the “Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation”. Through this foundation more than 50 billion dollars is spent in poor countries on projects and programmes in the areas of health and learning. (www.en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bill_Gates)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figures</th>
<th>Events</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1975</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1976</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 billion dollars</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1969</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Find out True/False statements according to the text and the UI box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statements</th>
<th>T</th>
<th>F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bill Gates is the boss of Microsoft, the best – known computer software company.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When Bill Gates was eleven he went to a private secondary school called Lakeside School.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paul Allen developed BASIC, a language used for writing computer programmes at University of Harvard.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bill never believed that there would be a computer in every home, and in every office.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation”, a charitable organization was set up by Bill Gates and his wife.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In 1975 Bill Gates started a company called Microsoft with his friend Paul Allen.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Internet started in 1969 in the USA.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nowadays, 35 per cent of computers use Microsoft programmes.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation” spends a lot of money on poor countries and on projects in the areas of health and learning.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Useful Information

The Internet started in 1969 in the USA. It was called Arpanet at first, but its name soon changed to the “Internet”. In those days, computers were enormous machines and not many people used them. This began to change in 1971 when Ray Tomlinson, an American engineer sent the first email message. He chose the symbol @ on his keyboard to identify his email address. The Internet didn’t become really popular until Tim Berners Lee, an English scientist, invented the www (World Wide Web) in 1989. Today you don’t need a big computer to go on the Internet. You can use a smart phone, or a laptop with a wi-fi connection.

Interview your partner and act it out.

**Farid:** Why did Bill Gates leave university?  **Zahra:** __________.

**Farid:** Was he right to leave university?  **Zahra:** __________.

**Farid:** How did he become successful?  **Zahra:** __________.

**Farid:** What does Bill Gates do with his billions?  **Zahra:** __________.

**Farid:** What kind of personality is Bill Gates?  **Zahra:** __________.
Lesson 4. A Friend or a Foe?

What you’ll learn:
- Inventions of the 21st century
- Inventions, their advantages/disadvantages
- The use of the Definite Article
- New words and word combinations on the topic

Word File:

bang [bæŋ] 1. (n) a sudden loud noise, bump. The door slammed with a bang.
2. (v) hit, beat, knock, bump, or put down smth forcefully and noisily, typically in anger or in order to attract attention.
He began to bang the table with his fist.

frown [fraʊn] 1. (n) a facial expression or look characterized by furrowing brows. 2. (v) make a face; furrow one’s brow in an expression of displeasure. He frowned as he reread the letter.

lawsuit [ˈlɔːsjuːt] (n) legal action, a claim or dispute brought to a court

obese [ˈɔuˈbiːs] (adj) fat or overweight, stout, plump, oily, heavy.
Some people are at a healthy weight, some are overweight or obese.

offender [ˈɔfendə] 1. (n) a person or thing that offends, does something wrong, or causes problems.
2. (n) a person who commits an illegal act; an offender or a lawbreaker

pregnant [ˈprɛɡnənt] (adj) expecting/carrying a baby/a child;

truck [træk] 1. (n) lorry 2. (v) convey by truck.

ultimate [ˈʌltɪmət] (adj) final, concluding, resulting, being or happening at the end of a process.
Their ultimate aim was to force his resignation.

1 IW. Find the word/words with a different sound.

[ g ] globe bang advantage pregnant gratitude
[ ɔː ] lawsuit booklet frown offender cooperation
[ A ] truck ultimate gabbage guide trouble
[ iː ] obese peasant audience children speech
2 CW. Have a look at the Mind Map and share your opinions on these inventions adding more ideas.

[Mind Map with connections between fast food, TV, weapon, phone, and a question mark]

3 GW. Debate. Read the model and fill in the table giving reasons for each of them. Sample:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inventions</th>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
<th>Reasons</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mobile phone</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camera</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>radio</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>computer</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aspirin</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>umbrella</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast food</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light bulb</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>www</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Student 1. I think all inventions are valuable. Personally, I think the computer is a useful and necessary tool in the world we live in. It’s also true that it usually brings more benefits to our lives. One of its great advantages is that it serves our interests.

Student 2. I know the computer is a real miracle. But it has changed our lives although it can create problems. One of major disadvantages of the computer is its ability to dominate* us.

Student 3. I think there are a lot of useful inventions. But at the same time some of them are not good. For example: Fast Food, speed cameras, as well as nuclear weapons and bombs rank among the most hated inventions of all times.

*to dominate – have a commanding influence on; exercise control over
4. GW. Read and complete the articles with the inventions filling the following words in the gaps. Retell the content.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a) bombs</th>
<th>b) car</th>
<th>c) weapons(2)</th>
<th>d) fast food(2)</th>
<th>e) cigarettes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

1. Americans are the ultimate ... (1) eaters, spending an estimated (calculated) $ 142 billion on it in 2006. But it seems our days of carefree (careless) use of fatty, cholesterol-rich food takes us to the health risks. In 2002, some obese US teenagers filed (arranged, organized) a lawsuit against McDonald’s accusing the ... (2) fattening them up. People choose to eat a lot of unhealthy food, they can’t blame the company that sells Fast Food to them.

2. ...(3), gun, biological ... (4) you name it – innovations that go bang or cause bodily harm were the most widely frowned upon in our survey. Nuclear ... (5) were the worst offender. They were used only twice during the war. In 1945, the USA dropped the bomb “Little Boy” on the Japanese city of Hiroshima.

3. What can cause cancer? ... (6). Men who smoke are twenty two times and women twelve times more likely to develop lung cancer than those who don’t. Smoking is also linked to other cancers and heart attacks. Pregnant smokers are at greater risk of giving birth to underweight babies. The World Health Organization says up to twenty-nine percent of British men and nineteen percent of women smoke.

4. The first motor ... (7) was built in 1885 in Germany. However, it was in America that cars were first produced in large numbers in factories. And now over a billion cars and light trucks are manufactured* by companies all over the world. Being the toy of the wealthy in the late 1880s cars changed everybody’s life. Modern cars are a part of our lives nowadays. We can’t imagine our lives without them. The motor industry is increasing now. Over 63 million cars are produced every year.

*manufacture – make smth on a large scale using machinery; produce
*take over – an act of assuming control of something, especially the buying out of one company by another; buyout, merger, purchase
5. GW. Read the numbers and make notes on the facts in the passages.

2002  2006  12  29 %
142  63 million
2002  1945  19  1880

6. IW/PW. Think and complete the table with your own ideas.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Inventions</th>
<th>Words to describe</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bombs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cigarettes</td>
<td>cancer-causing, harmful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fast Food</td>
<td>fatty, cholesterol-rich food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cars</td>
<td>initially the toy of the wealthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile phone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7. PW. Match the words with their definitions.

1. lawsuit  a) happening at the end of a long process
2. bang     b) form an idea of the cost, size, value of smth
3. dominate c) being very fat, in a way that is not healthy
4. ultimate d) a legal action or claim brought to a court
5. estimate e) having no worries or responsibility
6. carefree f) have a lot of influence over sb/sth
7. obese    g) bump, a sudden loud noise

8. IW/PW. Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Synonyms</th>
<th>Opposites</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>excellent</td>
<td></td>
<td>brilliant, perfect</td>
<td>awful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dangerous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>safe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rich</td>
<td></td>
<td>wealthy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devoted</td>
<td></td>
<td>faithful</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>successful</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>destructive</td>
<td>causing great harm or damage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>surprising</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modern</td>
<td></td>
<td>contemporary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unpopular</td>
<td>having a little popularity</td>
<td></td>
<td>unknown</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The World Health Organization says, up to twenty-nine percent of British men and nineteen percent of women smoke.

In 2002, some obese US teenagers filed a lawsuit against McDonald’s, accusing it of fattening them up.

Developed in the late 1880s, the modern automobile was a toy of rich people.

In 1969, Internet started in the USA.

The motor industry is increasing nowadays.

Today people don’t need a big computer to go on the Internet.

9. Complete the sentences with *a, an, the* or *zero (no)* article.

1. ... World Health Organization says, up to twenty-nine percent of ... British men and nineteen percent of ... women smoke.
2. In ... 2002, some obese US teenagers filed a lawsuit against ... McDonald’s, accusing it of fattening them up.
3. Developed in the late 1880s, the modern automobile was a toy of rich people.
4. ... Internet started in ... 1969 in ... USA.
5. ... motor industry is increasing nowadays.
6. Today people don’t need a big computer to go on the Internet.

10. Complete the verb phrases and make up sentences.

- to consume ... to cause ...
- to dislike ...
- to dominate ...
- to produce ...
- to realize ...
- to increase ...
- to give ...
- to become ...
- to organize ...
- to describe ...
- to accuse ...

11. Write a paragraph:

1. “Great Advantages and Major Disadvantages of Some Inventions.”
2. Make a Crossword on Inventions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Self-Assessment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Things I learned about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the benefits of inventions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the advantages/disadvantages of inventions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the use of the Definite Article</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the meanings/function of adjectives</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
OPTIONAL REVISION TASKS

Reading Comprehension and Writing

1. Listen and find the new words in the paragraphs about Helen Keller. Translate it into your own language.

Memory Pictures in Fingers

1. Helen Keller was born in Tuscumbia, Alabama, on June 27th 1880. The beginning of her life was very much like the beginning of every other child. When she was 2 she had congestion in her stomach and brain. She could not see, she became baffled by her environment. Her inability to express herself continued till the age of seven.

2. Helen’s life changed with the coming of Anne Sullivan, a teacher from the Perkins Institute for the Deaf and Blind. Anne helped Helen to overcome the barriers of darkness and silence. Helen learned to see with her fingers. Her teacher’s finger tricks became words for everything around her. Soon learning became a joy for her. In a few months she was ready to begin “braille”, the printed language for the blind. Helen’s vocabulary improved and she was able to go to Boston as a regular student in the Perkins Institute.

3. There she worked at Arithmetic, Zoology, Geography, History, French, German, and Latin. Soon she realized she could do anything with words on paper. Through it she could share her life with others. In it she could visit people of other lands and even other times: the heroes of ancient Greece, the characters from Shakespeare, and the tribes from faraway jungles. “How easy it is to fly on paper wings!” she thought.

4. Besides speech lessons Helen worked extremely hard as she wanted to go to college. The results were exciting and she passed everything. Four years moved swiftly and she passed final examinations. At the age of 24 she graduated with honours successfully.

5. After that Helen devoted her life to people who were in need. Beginning with “The Story of my Life, she wrote eight books as well as lots of essays and articles on blindness. Realising that she could not hope to solve the situation of the blind and the deaf herself, Helen turned her thoughts to the many capable and dedicated people who wished to help. From 1913 till the age of 80 she set out on tours around the world lecturing on the problems of the blind and deaf. Everywhere she was given a warm welcome. How happy she felt when new homes, schools, and workshops for the blind were set up!

REMEMBER!

Braille – a system of printing for blind people in which the letters of the alphabet and the numbers are printed as raised dots that can be read by touching them.

2. Match the topics to the paragraphs 1-5 above. (There is one extra)

Retell the content.

a) On Paper Wings
b) Stricken with Disease
c) Speech Miracles
d) Educational Success
e) Out of the Dark
f) Life Commitment
3 Interview your partner about the main events in his/her life and take notes looking through the UI box.

Useful Information

Helen Keller is the woman of international fame and admiration. In spite of her deafness and blindness she continued her education to a high level. Helen’s great will turned whatever seemed impossible into great achievement. She devoted herself to explaining the situation of **handicapped** people throughout the world.

*Don’t think of today’s failures, but of the success that may come tomorrow!* You have set a difficult task, but you will succeed if you preserve and you will find a joy in overcoming obstacles. Remember, no effort that we make to reach something beautiful is ever lost!

*(Helen Keller)*

4 Look at Helen’s biography and fill in the column with facts about her.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Helen Keller</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date of Birth</td>
<td>1880</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Citizenship</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birthplace</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nationality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Communication</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Characteristic features</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abilities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Awards</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Match the definitions to the words or phrases given in the passages.

1. to win  
2. having great love for smb/smth  
3. disability of hearing  
4. part of the body blocked with blood  
5. disability of seeing  
6. system of printing for blind people

a. braille  
b. devoted  
c. blind  
d. congestion  
e. to overcome  
f. deaf

6 Take notes under the following headings and make a plan for a famous person’s biography:

- Early Life
- Main Achievements
- Teenage years
- Ambitions for the Future

*handicapped – disabled, disadvantaged, invalid, physically challenged*
1. Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In the field of ...</th>
<th>What I learned</th>
<th>How I’ll implement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Writing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logical thinking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical thinking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammar section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other things</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Make a vocabulary map and write the words you learned around the unit in the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning/Synonym</th>
<th>Opposite/Antonym</th>
<th>Useful Phrases/Expressions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Think and sort out the words according to the parts of speech.

- bang
- painkiller
- supersonic
- lawsuit
- gravity
- light bulb
- lifetime
- the
- inventor
- by
- offender
- carefree
- obese
- about
- pregnant
- of
- dominate
- ultimate
- fate
- industry
- with
- create
- discovery
- camera
- in
- surveillance
- truck
- fascinating
- evolve

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4 Think and give equivalents of the words/phrases which mean:
1. a person or a thing that does smth wrong.
2. a speed greater/faster than that of sound.
3. a drug or medicine for relieving pain.
4. a glass bulb inserted into a lamp.
5. a person who is qualified to advise people about the law.
6. a mass of cells growing in or on a part of the body where they should not be.

5 Translate the expressions and use them in sentences.

chosen as the best invention, invited guests, most significant innovations, gained success, designed buildings, made achievements, necessary tools

6 Make up questions and think about answers to these questions.
1. Who/to invent/text-messaging/by?
2. When/aspirin/to take/the Moon?
3. What/to use/of the human body/to take/the temperature?
4. Who/to invent/penicillin?
5. What/to be/achievement/the most/famous/and/to change/the world?
6. Why/the computer/in our world/a necessary tool?
7. What/the toy of the rich/in the late 1880s/was?
8. Who/the first crossword/to compile by?
9. What/the most popular theory of Lotfi Zadeh/is?
10. Who/“Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation” by/to set up?

7 Group the words according to the chart.

lawsuit invention channel industry chemical organization offender telephone teenager cancer popularity health pregnant benefit truck nineteen scientist honest journalist develop text-messaging reality feeling influence carefree

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple Nouns</th>
<th>Derivative Nouns</th>
<th>Compound Nouns</th>
<th>Neither</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Lesson 1. We Are the World!

What you’ll learn:
• Why different festivals and performances are organized in schools
• How these festivals help us
• What friendship means

REM E M B E R !

■ One loyal (devoted) friend is worth a thousand relatives!
■ All people are different, but they always try to get on well!
  (Euripides, Greek playwright)

Word File:

betray [br’trei] (v) 1. cheat, fool, expose a person/one’s country/ a group, danger by treacherously giving information to an enemy.
2. hurt smb who trusts you. She betrayed his trust over and over again.
cross-cultural [‘krəskɔltʃʊrəl] (adj) multicultural, involving or containing ideas from two or more different countries or cultures, or relating to different cultures. Cross-cultural understanding.
religion [rɪ’lɪdʒən] (n) faith, belief, worship, the belief in and worship of a superhuman controlling power; the belief in the existence of God. I like his ideas about the relationship between science and religion.
swap [swɔp] (v) give smth to smb and receive smth in exchange; change, vary, alter, exchange, barter, trade.
Can I swap this magazine with yours? We swapped our phone numbers.
twin [twin] (v) link, combine, join, couple, join two people or things closely together.
The company twinned its main business fields.

1 IW. Practise the words with the same sound:
  [ i ] religion begin twin company
  [ eə ] betray ancient baseball trade
  [ ʃ ] worship shrine relationship share
  [ k ] coin conduct creative closely
2 GW/PW. Listen and complete the song inserting the appropriate word from the box. Sing the song.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a) better</th>
<th>b) riches</th>
<th>c) greedy</th>
<th>d) borders</th>
<th>e) reach</th>
<th>f) the needy</th>
<th>g) in peace</th>
<th>h) ever</th>
<th>i) whatever</th>
<th>j) conquer</th>
<th>k) the world</th>
<th>l) separated</th>
<th>m) to make</th>
<th>n) reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

We are the world,
Separated by ... (1),
but what bothers me is if
the world will ... (2) be one.

We are the world,
Separated by ... (3),
so I keep wondering if
the rich will ever ... (4) out to the poor.

We are the world,
... (5) by power,
the weak suffer,
and the strong ... (6).

Borders are good,
hut not when it separates ... (7).
Riches is good, because it is from the Lord.
Power is good, when it is used to make the world ... (8).
Peace is better than war,
and been needy is better than been ... (9).

Whoever you are,
wherever you are,
... (10) you have,
and what so ever you do,
always work hard
... (11) the world a better place,
because you and I are the world!

3 CW. Listen to the song again and check. Practise pronouncing the words with correct intonation. Sing the song again.

4 PW. Play a role.

Student’s Card
Your friend asks you questions about some other friends you’ve got.
Answer the questions and:
• give examples of your friendship  • say how long you have been friends
• explain why you are friends  • ask your partner questions about his/her friends
5 GW. Express your attitude to the ideas in the letters and answer the questions.

1. How do students communicate with one another?
2. Is it important to have a friend in another country? Why?
3. What festivals and performances are organized in your school?
4. How can these performances and festivals help you?
5. What is the purpose of the cross-cultural projects?
6. Do international schools help young people to understand the world? How?
7. How can people learn about different cultures, customs and traditions?

My school is twinned with an international school in West Africa. We swap work projects with African children. We want to learn the things that African children learn and what life in Africa is like. I’ve got a great pen-friend in that school. Her name is Shannen. We communicate by e-mail. I’ve learnt a lot of interesting things from her: about the festivals her family celebrates, about their traditions and everyday life. Her language, religion and lifestyle are absolutely different, but we understand each other very well. It is really important to have a friend in another country. It helps to learn more about other cultures and traditions.

Best wishes, Lale.

I’ve taken part in a cross-cultural project lately. I was very happy to communicate with young people from different countries. There was a great choice of activities. This project helped us to know each other better and understand more about each other’s religions and lifestyles. By sharing different experiences we’ve learnt a lot about different cultures, customs and traditions. I think it’s better than reading a book in a classroom. We’ve swapped e-mail addresses and telephone numbers. I believe that we have not only learnt a number of various things, but we’ve also made great friends.

Best wishes, Murad.

There are 25 children in our class and 10 of them are from different countries. It’s really interesting to have so many students from all around the world in one school. Everyone has different religions, lifestyles and different customs and traditions. We are all different, but we all get on well (get along well, be on friendly terms). We communicate every day and learn about one another’s culture from festivals and performances* which are organized at our school. It is interesting to study at an international school. International schools make everybody understand how big the world is and how many people live on the planet that we call our home. They help us to understand that we are all different and also alike. We are the world!

In friendship, Aygul.

* performance – 1. an act of staging or presenting a play, concert, or other form of entertainment. 2. the action or process of carrying out or accomplishing an action, task, or function
Children go to schools which are twinned with ... (1) schools.
They swap (exchange)... (2) projects with one another. They ... (3) who they ... (4) with by e-mail. They learn a lot of interesting things about their ... (5), ... (6) and ... (7). Every day they work on projects with children who have different ... (8), ... (9), ... (10) and ... (11).
Children take part in ... (12) projects. They communicate with one another ... (13) different stories and ... (14) different experiences. Any cross-cultural communication helps children from different countries:
• to know what life is like in different countries
• to understand about one another’s lifestyle, culture and ... (15).
• to learn how to make great friends.
• to understand how ... (16).

There is a very nice tradition among American and British kids. They swap friendship bracelets. This tradition comes from Indians - Native Americans. When kids swap friendship bracelets they show how much they like their new friends.

• No man is useless while he has a friend.
  (R.L.Stevenson)
• True friendship is a plant of slow growth.
  (G.Washington)
• Friends are like melons. To find a good one, you must try it a hundred times.  (C.Mermet)
• A friend to everyone is a friend to nobody.
• He has no friends who has many friends.
• A friend in need is a friend indeed.

1. Friendship is a feeling that ... .
2. Friends are people who ... .
3. Friends are like melons, ... .
4. Friend is a person who ... .
5. A true friend is a person that ... .
6. What is a friend? He is ... .
 IW. Make a report on cultural experiences reading the UI box.

### Useful Information

Friendship Force International (FFI) is a global citizen exchange programme with headquarters* based in Atlanta, Georgia, the USA. While in the White House in 1977, President and Mrs. Jimmy Carter supported the founding of the organization. The purpose of this organization is to bring people closer together by sponsoring international homestay programmes. FFI is already 30 years old. It has clubs in more than 60 countries around the world. Friendship Force International sponsors over 350 exchanges a year amongst these countries. We have “The International Friendship Force Club” Public Society in Azerbaijan, too. Visit: www.friendshipforce.org.

 IW. Read the poem and give your opinion about friendship. Learn the poem by heart.

For me a friend is a person who cares,
For me a friend is a person who shares,
A person who is honest and fair,
A friend is someone who is always there
Friendship is a feeling that lasts forever,
And a true friend betrays you never.

 PW. Match the halves.

1. the belief in the existence of God
da) cross-cultural
2. a relationship between friends
b) friendship
3. containing ideas from more different cultures
c) betray
c) religion
d) twin
d) swap
4. to hurt sb who trusts you
e) religious
5. to join two people or things closely together
f) swap
6. closely connected with religion

g) religious
7. to receive sth in exchange

 IW. Create a paragraph on: 1. “We Are the World!”

2. Write the Receipe of Friendship.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Self-Assessment</th>
<th>Activities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I remember everything about</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t have any problems with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think I need some more practice in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think I need a lot more practice in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ll try to get extra practice in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*headquarters – the premises occupied by a military commander and the commander’s staff*
Lesson 2. How Tolerant Are You?

What you’ll learn:

• What national values we have
• What is the most important value for us
• What is our religion
• What national/religious holidays we have
• How we spend our national/religious holidays

Word File:

 affiliated [əˈfilɪɪtɪd] (adj) associated, related, integrated
The site includes a reading list selected by affiliated faculty.
holy ['hɔuli] (adj) 1. blessed, sacred, saint connected with God or a particular religion
2. good in a moral and religious way.
mosque [məsk] (n) a building in which Muslims worship, a Muslim place of worship.
pray [preɪ] (v) 1. speak to God, especially give thanks or ask for help; bend the knee, beg, worship
2. hope very much that smth will happen.
The whole family prayed for the baby.
sacred ['sekrɪd] (adj) holy, blessed, connected with God, a sacred image, shrine/temple. Sacred music is very important.
tolerant ['tələrənt] (adj) able to accept what other people say or do even if you don’t agree with them, liberal (ant: intolerant)
He has a very tolerant attitude towards other religions.
We must be tolerant to others.

1 PW. Practise pronouncing the words with the same sound and write them in the right column.

mosque sacred practise strong finger hang tongue morning pray treat meet greet business holy typical affiliated speak treat spray plain dangerous sacred typical miracle

[ k ] [ eɪ ] [ ɣ ] [ iː ] [ ɪ ]
All these are our national values, our history and wealth. One of them, our “lavash” which means bread is known in many countries. UNESCO has declared “Lavash” as the national value of Azerbaijan.

Ismayil: What nationalities live in Azerbaijan? Lale:  
Ismayil: And what about national minorities? Lale:  
Ismayil: What religions do you know? Lale:  
Ismayil: How tolerant are you to other religions or nationalities? Lale:  
Ismayil: Do all nationalities enjoy equal rights in Azerbaijan? Lale:  

Useful Information

The word “Quran” comes from the Arabic verb, and literally has the meaning “recitation”, “reading”. The words in the Quran are linked to the 23-years of Mohammad’s call, from A.D. 610 to his death in 632. According to Islam, the Quran is the very word of Allah. The Quran was sent/posted to the Prophet Muhammad by God through the Angel Gabriel (Jabrail). The language of the Quran is Arabic, the dialect belonging to the Guraish tribe, the tribe entrusted* with the city of Mecca, and the tribe Mohammad’s family was a part of it. The Quran is divided into 114 chapters (units), called surah(s), these chapters, with the exception of the first are generally arranged according to their length. Surah 2, the Cow is the longest and the last ones are the shortest. So, quranic chapters are called surahs and verses are called ayahs.

*entrust – endow, trust
4 GW. Match the titles with the paragraphs A-D. Retell its content.

1. It’s My Life  
2. Religion and Language  
3. Food for Thought  
4. The Religion of Islam

A) Muslims are people who follow the religion of Islam. It was founded in the seventh century by the Prophet Muhammad. While Christians live according to the Bible, Muslims practise the teaching of their own holy book, the Quran. And the Quran is the most valuable book for Muslims.

B) Nine-year-old Zeyneb, who lives in England, goes to the mosque four times a week to learn Arabic. As a Muslim she should learn to read the Quran. Zeyneb goes to a multi-cultural school where most of her friends are Asian. Besides English, Zeyneb also speaks Urdu and Punjabi.

C) Zeyneb has to be very careful about what she eats. All products she eats should be “halal”, which means they are prepared according to certain Islamic laws.

D) Muslims celebrate Eid – a religious Muslim festival at the end of Ramadan, when they take part in a big festive (solemn, ceremony, gala). They don’t eat from sunrise to sunset during the month of Ramadan. At Eid Zeyneb wears a traditional costume. The whole family goes to the mosque to pray.

5 GW. Think and tick the true sentences explaining them.

1. The Quran is the holy book for Muslims.  
2. Zeyneb’s first language is Arabic.  
3. The pupils in Zeyneb’s school come from different cultures.  
4. During Ramadan people never eat or drink at all.  
5. All meat products Muslims eat should be halal.

6 IW. Read the “Remember” box and write paragraphs:

1. “We Should Respect All Religions!”  
2. “Islam Calls Us to Unity!”

**REMEMBER!**

Religion is a cultural system of behaviors and practices, world views, ethics, and social organisation that relate humanity to an order of existence. About 84% of the world’s population is affiliated with one of the five largest religions, namely Christianity, Islam, Hinduism, Buddhism or folk religion. We must respect all nationalities, their religions, races, customs and traditions and it will help them to live in mutual understanding and avoid ethnic, religious or racial discrimination*.

*racial discrimination – racism, racialism
1. Answer the quiz and check your tolerance level.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. If you meet somebody from different religion:</th>
<th>2. If you go to a foreign country:</th>
<th>3. If you meet anybody with a different hobby:</th>
<th>4. If a new student who has succeeded in the Olympiads comes to your class:</th>
<th>5. If you meet anybody with opinions completely different from yours:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a) are you friendly? b) do you ignore them? c) do you try to understand them?</td>
<td>a) do you try to speak the language? b) do you think there is nothing worth appreciating? c) do you try to understand the culture?</td>
<td>a) do you want to know more about it? b) do you tell them it is a waste of time? c) do you want to try it yourself?</td>
<td>a) are you willing to sit next to him/her? b) are you worried about your own reputation? c) are you happy to share books and ideas with him/her?</td>
<td>a) do you try to change their ideas? b) do you start a fight? c) do you accept that everybody has a right to their own opinion?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tolerance Level:**

If you have mainly (a) answers you’re quite tolerant, but you should keep trying;
If you have mainly (b) answers you should rethink of your attitude;
If you have mainly (c) answers you’re tolerant.

2. Read the UI box, search for more information about Islam/Muslim and other religious traditions.

**Useful Information**

**Lent*** is the period of forty days before Easter. For Christians it’s a time to give up something, for example, to stop eating sweets. Then at Easter, children in Britain eat lots of sweet things – especially chocolate, Easter eggs! Lent begins on Wednesday, and many people eat something special on the day before “**Shrove Tuesday**” (February 8th is Shrove Tuesday or Pancake Day as it is often referred to). In Britain people like eating pancakes.

---

**lent** – the period preceding Easter that in the Christian Church is devoted to fasting. In the Western Church it runs from Ash Wednesday to Holy Saturday and so includes forty weekdays.
3 Search more information about Ateshgah looking through the UI box and make a presentation.

Useful Information

The First Olympic Flame started from Ateshgah temple in 2015 First European Games. The President of Azerbaijan, also the President of the Azerbaijan National Olympic Committee Ilham Aliyev lit the official Olympia flame in the sacred temple first. President Ilham Aliyev passed the torch to Olympic handball champion Rafiga Shabanova and she began the journey of the Flame. By passing the flame from one to another in a collaborative gesture, torch bearers (who carry the torch) spread a message of peace, friendship and celebration through sport. The flame travelled around the regions of Azerbaijan for 47 days nearly 5,500 km.

The temple* Ateshgah is in the village of Surakhany, 15km. from Baku. “Atesghah” means “home of fire”. It’s a sacred place for people. The current Ateshgah was built in the 17th-18th centuries in the place of “eternal*” fires. Some of the earliest constructions of the temple belong to the year 1713. The temple was built with funds of the Indian merchant Kanjanagara in 1810. “Atesghah” was built by Hindu Sikhs, originally from North India that came and settled here in Baku. Ateshgah is located in a little distance from the sea, on the Apsheron Peninsula, at the south-eastern end of the village of Surakhany, near the oil fields. At present, such temple of fire exists only in three places in the world – in Azerbaijan, in Iran and in North India. The Indians built cells, prayer rooms and guest rooms at the temple. Temple of Fire made a great impression on the world famous scientist Mendeleyev, the famous Russian artist Veressagin, the French writer Alexander Duma, the Nobel brothers, Jawaharlal Nehru, Indira Gandhi, the world famous film director Raj Kapoor and many other famous people. Fire is still sacred today in India.

4 Fill in gaps with the suitable modals where necessary.
1. All nationalities and religions ... enjoy equal rights in Azerbaijan.
2. Muslims ... eat anything made from a pork.
3. At Eid Zeyneb ... drink or eat too much or she might be ill.
4. During Ramadan Muslims ... eat or drink from sunrise to sunset.
5. The meat muslims eat ... be halal.
6. We ... be tolerant to other religions.

*temple – a building devoted to the worship, or regarded as the dwelling place of a God; sanctuary, church, cathedral, mosque
*eternal – lasting or existing forever; without end or beginning; everlasting, never-ending, immortal
Lesson 3. **How Charitable We Are!**

**What you’ll learn:**
- Which famous people in our country are UN Goodwill Ambassadors
- How these famous people help the poor, the disabled, the homeless
- How important it is to help people in need

**REMEMBER!**
- *The most expensive thing in the world is Trust! It takes years to earn but seconds to lose!*  
  
  *(Unknown)*

**Word File:**

- **ambassador** [æmˈbæsədər] (n) messenger, representative, a diplomat sent by a country as its official representative to a foreign country.  
  *Mehriban Aliyeva is a goodwill ambassador of UNESCO.*

- **contribute** [kənˈtrɪbat] (v) help, aid, grant, support, donate.  
  *He contributed more than $500,000 to the centre.*

- **missionary** [ˈmɪʃənəri] (n) 1. ambassador, messenger, missioner  
  2. a person sent on a religious mission/missionary work.

- **missionary** [ˈmɪʃənəri] (n) 1. ambassador, messenger, missioner  
  2. a person sent on a religious mission/missionary work.

- **missionary** [ˈmɪʃənəri] (n) 1. ambassador, messenger, missioner  
  2. a person sent on a religious mission/missionary work.

- **persuade** [pəˈswiːd] (v) assure, convince someone to do smth through reasoning or argument.  
  *It wasn’t easy, but I persuaded him to do the right thing.*

- **promote** [proˈmouːt] (v) support, encourage, stimulate, advance or raise someone to a higher position or rank.  
  *She was promoted to a general manager.*

- **tremendous** [trɪˈmendəs] (adj) huge, enormous, great, immense

- **victim** [ˈvɪktɪm] (n) sacrifice, fatality, loss; a person harmed, injured, or killed as a result of an accident.  
  *They raised money to help victims of crime and the needy.*

- **volunteer** [vɔlənˈtɪər] 1. (n) a person who freely offers to take part in an enterprise or undertake a task.  
  *Last weekend volunteers undertook the painstaking job of cutting the grass around the house.*  
  2. (v) freely offer to do smth.  
  *He volunteered for the job.*

1. **IW. Practise the words with the same sound.**

   - [ʃ] politician pollution social mission
   - [ɪ] charity equality popularity fraternity
   - [s] solidarity persuade ambassador tremendous
GW. Look at the pictures of famous people and fill in the KWL chart. Search more facts on the internet and continue the chart.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>K</th>
<th>W</th>
<th>L</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Heydar Aliyev</strong></td>
<td>• was an international leader</td>
<td>• What was his aim?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• devoted himself to his country and people</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mother Teresa</strong></td>
<td>• devoted herself to the poor</td>
<td>• What was the aim of the “Missionaries of Charity”?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• started her own order “Missionaries of Charity”</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• received a number of awards and <strong>distinctions</strong>*.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>H.Z. Tagiyev</strong></td>
<td>• was a <strong>stonemason</strong></td>
<td>• When did he become a millionaire?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• was a builder</td>
<td>• What else did he do for charity purposes?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• helped the poor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Kofi Annan</strong></td>
<td>• was first elected Secretary General of the United Nations Organization</td>
<td>• What was his goal?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• What did he do in the international area?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Useful Information**

The Society of **Missionaries** has spread all over the world. They provide effective help to the poor in a number of countries in Asia, Africa and Latin America, and they take care of **victims** of natural catastrophes such as floods, epidemics, **famine** (*hunger, famine, starvation, food shortages*), and refugees.

*distinction – a difference or contrast between similar things or people; difference, differentiation
*stonemason – a person who cuts, prepares, and builds with stone; bricklayer, mason
3 GW. Express your attitude to the ideas in the passages and discuss them.

Charity People

- “Mehriban Aliyeva, the President of the Heydar Aliyev Foundation, Goodwill Ambassador* of UNESCO and ISESCO, the first Lady of Azerbaijan always organizes worldwide and large-scale charitable projects and different exhibitions and competitions. She is the initiator of the First Baku European Games-2015 held in Azerbaijan. As the Chairperson of Baku-2015 First European Games Organising Committee Mehriban Aliyeva does her best for independent Azerbaijan, for the happiness and peace of the people of Azerbaijan. She is greatly proud of her country and people.

- Shakira Mebarak is an international singing sensation. Using the popularity and interest in children’s issues, Shakira promotes UNICEF’s mission of ensuring the safety of every child around the world. She says: “UNICEF has done tremendous work in my home country. I’ve seen first-hand the difference UNICEF makes.” And I do my best to help the children who are in need.

- David Beckham is the world’s most famous footballer. Beckham is involved in UNICEF’s Sports for development programme, which promotes the power of sport to improve children’s lives. He says: “It’s one of the proudest moments of my life to be given the role of UNICEF Goodwill Ambassador and I hope to play a part in supporting these needy children.

♦ Who can join charity clubs, organizations?
♦ What famous people/stars do you know who do charity work?
♦ What famous people in our country can be UN Goodwill Ambassadors? Why?

4 GW. Fill in the table according to the passages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>What charity do people support?</th>
<th>What are people’s fundraising ideas</th>
<th>Who are involved in the fundraising?</th>
<th>What makes the people organize fundraising?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*ambassador – an accredited diplomat sent by a country as its official representative to a foreign country; representative, messenger
5 GW. Search information about Tagiyev’s biography and fill in the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Haji Zeynalabdin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Surname</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birthplace</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nationality</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Years he lived</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Charitable activities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 GW. Complete the Fact File about another UNICEF Goodwill Ambassador using the words in the box.

- a) attended
- b) written
- c) who was born
- d) he was given
- e) held
- f) who is regarded
- g) accompanied
- h) won

UNICEF’s latest Goodwill Ambassador is Lang Lang, (1)... a most talented young pianist of our times, who is determined to raise awareness to the needs of children throughout the world. Lang Lang, (2)... into a musical family in Shenyang, started piano lessons at the age of three. At nine, he entered the Central Music Conservatory of China. As his talent grew, he began to join competitions. Among the titles (3)... by him was first prize at the prestigious Tchaikovsky International Young Musicians” Competition (4)... in 1995 in Japan. In 1997, 15-year-old Lang Lang, (5)... by his father, went to the US to study at the Curtis Institute in Philadelphia. In April 2001, Lang Lang made his Carnegie Hall debut. (6)... great reviews by the American critics. At the Great Hall of the People in Beijing he gave a concert (7)... by an audience of 8,000 people. A recent article (8)... about him in Teen People identified him as one of the “Top Twenty Teens who will change the world.”

7 IW. Project. Create a plan looking through the sample and explain your opinions.

**Charity Plan**

Decide what charity organization you would like contribute to:

- Think of interesting creative ideas for charity
- Write an announcement about the charity fair
- Think of a name for your charity organization
- Plan charity activities you want your classmates to be involved in
- Make a poster about your charity organization
When I read the article about poor children and those who suffer from famine in Africa I wanted to help by raising money. We discussed this idea with our classmates at school and decided to raise money by designing a website on the Internet. We wanted to use the Internet for involving other children in volunteering. We used the website to present the photos and the video about the children who are in need. We also asked the students from other schools to contribute to charity. Our classmates collected books and my grandfather organized a charity run for the project. We donated the books and 500 manats to the children in need.
Andrew Carnegie, a philanthropist, was one of the world’s richest men. He made a fortune in the oil and steel industries, but spent most of his life giving his money away. Carnegie was born in Scotland in 1835. When he was 13, his family immigrated to the US. When he was 14 he started to work for $1.20 a week. He was intelligent and hardworking, and it didn’t take him long to become rich. But Carnegie always remembered the day he wanted to use a library in Pittsburgh, but he was not permitted to enter. He was disappointed to learn that the library was for members only. As Carnegie’s fortune grew, he started to give his money away. One of his biggest desires was to build free public libraries. He wanted everyone to have access to libraries and education. He believed that education was the key to a successful life. In 1881, there were only a few public libraries for the people. Over the doors of the Carnegie Library of Pittsburgh, carved in stone, are his own words, “Free to the People.” By the time Carnegie died, there had been more than 2,500 public libraries in the English-speaking world. But building libraries was not his only contribution. In his book, “The Gospel of Wealth”, he tried to persuade other wealthy people to donate their money.

Here are some of the ideas he wrote about in his book:

- To give away money is the best thing rich people can do.
- It’s the moral obligation of the wealthy people to help others
- It’s important for a rich person to set an example for others.
- It’s not good to have money if your spirit is poor.
- It is the mind that makes the body rich.

By the time he died in 1919, Carnegie had given away more than $350 million that time which is $3.7 billion today.

A philanthropist – is a person who gives away money to help other people.

5 Find True/False statements giving explanation.

1. Andrew Carnegie started to work when he was very old.
2. He tried to enter a library, but he wasn’t allowed inside.
3. He thought that the rich didn’t have to help the poor.
4. He thought it was better to have a rich spirit than a big bank account.
5. Andrew Carnegie made a fortune in the gold industry.
6. He believed that education was the key to a successful life.
Lesson 4. Let’s Try to Reduce Social Problems!

What you’ll learn:

- What social problems people often face
- What causes social problems
- What we can do to solve or reduce these problems
- What homophones are
- What a Substantivised Adjective is

Word File:

affordable [əˈfɔːdəbl] (adj) permissible, admissible, allowable, acceptable, inexpensive, reasonably priced. Affordable housing.

assume [əˈsjuːm] (v) 1. guess, suppose, think, fancy, without proof.
You’re afraid of what people assume about me.

2. accept, manage.
He assumed full responsibility for all organizational work.

attempt [əˈtemp] (n) effort, an act of trying to achieve something, typically one that is unsuccessful or not certain to succeed.

dormitory [ˈdɔːmɪtɔrɪ] (n) a sleeping quarters, bedchamber, a large bedroom for a number of people in a school or institution.
The dormitory where we used to sleep was really clean and tidy.

unemployment [ˈʌnɪmˈpləʊmənt] (n) the state of being unemployed, the fact of a number of people not having a job/without a job.
Drug abuse, unemployment and prejudice are among the many difficulties facing our communities.

unemployed [ˈʌnɪmˈplɔːd] (adj) workless, jobless (person), out-of-work.
I was unemployed for three years.

1 GW. Find out which word/words in each line doesn’t/don’t have the same sound.

[ɔː] affordable flour sport dormitory power
[ə] adopt fortress wonder portable coincide
[eə] pray important ancient unemployment weight
[au] crown township laundry proud town
GW. Debate. Give the main reasons for these situations and compare.

**The rich**
- have no money problem
- can afford all the luxury
- live in very big houses
- live in comfortable villas

**The poor**
- have money problems
- can’t afford food or any luxury
- can’t even take care of their health

**Both**

---

### GRAMMAR SPOT

**The Substantivized Adjectives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>poor</th>
<th>the poor</th>
<th>old</th>
<th>the old</th>
<th>young</th>
<th>the young</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a poor man</td>
<td>the poor= poor people not <strong>the poors</strong></td>
<td>an old man</td>
<td>the old= old people not <strong>the olds</strong></td>
<td>a young man</td>
<td>the young= young people not <strong>the youngs</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*These adjectives have the function of a noun and may:*

a) indicate the class of peoples *(the unemployed)*
b) denote nationalities *(the English)*

**Sample:** Some people think that the rich should pay higher taxes. The government has promised to provide more money to help the homeless.

**Note:** Substantivised Adjectives are always used with the verb in the plural!
119

Homelessness is one of the major problems in the world nowadays. There are regular attempts by authorities to help the homeless. Many people assume that homeless people live on the streets as a result of drug or alcohol misuse. Charitable organizations try to help the homeless, those who have no home. So, this is considered sufficient by some people. There is no doubt that drug abuse* is a major contributing factor leading to homelessness. On the other hand, there are increasing numbers of people who are homeless, because of the lack of affordable housing. In addition to this, as unemployment increases, more people struggle to keep up with their home payments. A frightening number of the homeless are families with children. They are, in fact, the fastest growing part of the homeless population. Furthermore, it’s not only the unemployed who can’t afford housing. According to a recent survey, a quarter of the homeless people (20-25 percent) actually work. Nevertheless, they still cannot afford to pay for accommodation (flat). In conclusion, the responsibility for homelessness should not just be left to charities, but as a society we need to help people before they find themselves on the streets.

Let’s help the needy! Let’s support the homeless!

*drug abuse – the habitual taking of addictive or illegal drugs
Boys’ Town began as a home for orphans, homeless boys and boys in trouble with the law. The first Boys’ Town was founded in the 1930s. It has grown much since then and now it is located in the west of Omaha, Nebraska. Rather than living in dormitories, the children, now boys and girls, live in homes with “host” parents. Usually, 12 children live in a home, and each child is required to take part in the household activities. Boys’ Town is a self-supporting community* with its own post-office, fire department, police and city “government”. The children help to run the city. There is also a farm, and Boys’ Town residents do all of the work required to take care of the animals and plants. Many adults live in Boys’ Town. They are teachers, host parents, advisors, or they run the finances.

**REMEMBER!**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Meanings</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accommodation</td>
<td>a place to live, to work or to stay in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>community</td>
<td>the people who live in a particular area, country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homeless</td>
<td>having no home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the homeless</td>
<td>the people who have no home</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volunteer</td>
<td>a person who does a job without being paid for it</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

First of all, I think, in our society, the homeless, additionally, drug abuse, alcohol misuse, no doubt, responsibility, the government, furthermore, nevertheless, in my opinion, in conclusion

**GW. Read the article and answer the questions.**

1. What is this article about?
2. What are the advantages of Boys’ town?
3. Do you know of any similar experiment in our country? Which one?

**Boys’ Town**

Boys’ Town began as a home for orphans, homeless boys and boys in trouble with the law. The first Boys’ Town was founded in the 1930s. It has grown much since then and now it is located in the west of Omaha, Nebraska. Rather than living in dormitories, the children, now boys and girls, live in homes with “host” parents. Usually, 12 children live in a home, and each child is required to take part in the household activities. Boys’ Town is a self-supporting community* with its own post-office, fire department, police and city “government”. The children help to run the city. There is also a farm, and Boys’ Town residents do all of the work required to take care of the animals and plants. Many adults live in Boys’ Town. They are teachers, host parents, advisors, or they run the finances.

**8. IW/PW. Think and find the unscrambled words and try to use them in sentences.**

meholess - lindb - umesas -
redjiun - lebadbis - yedunemplo -
reigno - forafleab - adesuper -
usesim - ryitomidor - teerlunvo -

*community – a group of people living in the same place or having a particular characteristic in common
9 PW. Read and practise Homophones. Pay attention to the spelling to avoid any confusion.

**REMEMBER!**

Homophones – that have the same pronunciation, but different spelling and meaning. Avoid confusion!

- steal [ɪːl] steel
- die [daɪ] dye
- four [fɔːr] for
- son [sʌn] sun
- week [wiːk] weak
- peace [piːs] piece
- buy [baɪ] by
- sea [siː] see

♦ We love peace! ♦ Give me a piece of paper, please!

10 PW. Listen and write the homophones dictation and then check it with the true version. (Sample: two-too, hi-high, flower-flour)

11 IW. Read and match the definitions.

1. a man who has no home  a) charitable
2. a man who has no job b) comfortable
3. a man that is diligent c) homeless
4. a person who gives money to needy people d) intelligent
5. cosy e) successful
6. a man who helps others f) hardworking
7. a person who is clever and wise g) unemployed
8. the one who succeeds in smth h) philanthropist

12 PW/IW. Choose the wrong pairs of antonyms.

1. abuse-praise  5. cruelty-kindness  9. ability-disability
2. polluted-dirty  6. fair-important  10. employed-unemployed
3. safe-dangerous  7. harmful-harmless  11. peaceful-peace-loving
4. wealthy-rich  8. poor-rich  12. independent-dependent

13 IW. Give Azerbaijani equivalents of the following quotes/metaphors and use them in situations.

- Never give up, you’ll find a way!
- Work as well as you can! Trust your instincts!
PW. Think and complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Close Meaning</th>
<th>Opposite</th>
<th>Sample</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kindness</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unemployed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blind</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accommodation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injured</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>volunteer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fundraising</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praise</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abuse</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peace-loving</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Self-Assessment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description of Achievement</th>
<th>Excellent</th>
<th>Good</th>
<th>Fair</th>
<th>Poor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>I can:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• ask/answer questions on social problems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• take part in discussions on the topic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• find the meanings of words</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• find the equivalents of sayings/proverbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• talk about global problems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I can read and understand:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• texts about the social problems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• answer questions on social problems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• and find the opposites of words</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• and find the homophones</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• and match the words with their definitions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>I can:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• build up sentences using the key words</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• create a newspaper article on social problems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• unscramble words and try to use them in sentences</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In the field of ...</th>
<th>What I learned</th>
<th>How I’ll implement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Listening</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Speaking</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reading</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Writing</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Logical thinking</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Critical thinking</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Grammar section</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other things</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Make a vocabulary map and write the words you learned around the unit in the box. You can add the meanings in your native language as well.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning/Synonym</th>
<th>Opposite/Antonym</th>
<th>Useful Phrases/Expressions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Think and sort out the words according to the parts of speech.

```
twin swap without poverty social good at somewhere society between friendship kindness fundraising raise for closely religious temple belief culture volunteer support cross-cultural unemployed philanthropist from cruelty abuse peace-loving this betray relationship events
```

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4 Fill in the gaps with the words from the box.

1. Aydan says that in her school students do a lot of ....
2. Their school ... for different charities.
3. Alex’s schoolmates and parents ... money to charity.
4. Our school usually spends ... on school needs.
5. Zahra and her classmates ... needy people in poor countries.
6. Suleyman is glad that he can help the ....

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The poor/poor</th>
<th>a) money</th>
<th>b) donate</th>
<th>c) raised</th>
<th>d) charity projects</th>
<th>e) support</th>
<th>f) needy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Choose the suitable word.

1. The poor/poor old man was in despair.
2. The Japanese/Japanese have a long and interesting history.
3. The homeless/homeless need more help from the government.
4. French/the French are famous for their food.
5. The young/young have the future in their hands.
7. Charitable people always take care of disabled/the disabled.
8. Robin Hood robbed the rich/rich and gave the money to the poor/poor.
9. There are a number of new work places for unemployed/the unemployed.

6 Say what you think about these activities.

Sample: Organising a charity fair is a good idea. Our school has raised money to give the financial support for the old in Shuvelan. The PTAs* in most schools do all possible to help the Children Homes in Baku. Helping those who are in need is necessary.

7 Design and organize your own charity.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The aim of your charity</th>
<th>What sort of help you offer</th>
<th>How you’ll raise funds</th>
<th>Think of a name for the charity</th>
<th>Think of a motto for the charity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8 List the reasons why it’s important to make friends with people from different countries and compare your list with your partner’s.

Sample:
• to learn more about other countries and other people
• to learn how to get on with people of different cultures
• to understand different religions, culture and lifestyles
• to understand that people from other religions are different, but much alike
• to realize that the planet is our home and we must get on well with one another

*PTA – Parent-Teacher Association
Lesson 1. The United Kingdom

What you’ll learn:
- What maps can tell us
- How many countries there are in the UK
- Where Great Britain is situated
- Some facts about who rules over the country in Great Britain

Word File:

**aircraft** ['ɛəkrəft] (n) airplane, jet, helicopter, or other machine capable of flight. *Launched for a test flight, the aircraft failed to gain height.*

**monarchy** ['mɔnəkɪ] (n) kingship, a form of government with a monarch at the head.

The difference in the constitution may be from social democracy to absolute monarchy.

**provide** [prəˈvaɪd] (v) 1. supply, give, grant, deliver, donate, contribute, make available for use. *These clubs provide an appreciated service for this area.*

2. arrange, make adequate preparation for a possible event. *New qualifications must provide for changes in technology.*

**reign** [rem] (v) rule over, lead, dominate, rule as a king or a queen. *Queen Elizabeth reigns over the UK.*

**shipbuilding** ['ʃɪp,bɪldɪŋ] (n) boatbuilding

**textile** ['tekstaɪl] 1. (adj) of or relating to fabric or weaving; the textile industry. 2. (n) fabric, cloth, material. *Uzbekistan was the main producer of cotton for the Russian textile industry.*

1 IW. Listen and repeat the words clearly. Write the words in the appropriate columns.

provide textile combine paradise pride reign danger plane change strange brunch luck jump mother industry weather together clothes either bother
Asif: There are three countries in Great Britain.

Asif: The official language of Great Britain and in the UK is English.

Asif: A red rose, a shamrock, a daffodil and a thistle.

Asif: Britain has links with many countries of the world. It’s the member of many international organizations.

Asif: Britain is recognized as an important industrial state in the world. International trade plays a great role in its economy.

Asif: Britain’s education provides wide opportunities for people with different interests and abilities. Young people from all parts of the world come to study there.

Asif: Britain’s rich history, famous sights and beautiful landscapes always attract tourists from all over the world and tourists visit this country to see everything with their own eyes and they enjoy being here.
Two large islands and a lot of small ones are situated in the north-west of Europe. They are known as the British Isles. The largest island is called Great Britain. The other large island is called Ireland. On the British Isles there are two states: the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland and the Republic of Ireland. Great Britain, or Britain is the name for the largest island in the British Isles, which is divided into England, Scotland and Wales. It’s the eighth largest island in the world. It is washed by the Atlantic Ocean in the north and in the west and by the North Sea in the east. In the south it’s separated by the English Channel from the continent. The United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland is the political name of the country, which is made up of England, Scotland, Wales and Northern Ireland. The capital of the United Kingdom (the UK) is London. The population of the UK is more than 60 million people. The UK is a highly developed industrial country. It’s known as one of the world’s largest producers and exporters of machinery, electronics, textile, aircraft and navigation equipment. One of the chief industries of the country is shipbuilding. The UK flag is called Union Jack. The UK is a constitutional monarchy. In law, the Head of State is the Queen. In practice, the Queen reigns, but doesn’t rule. The country is ruled by the elected government with the Prime Minister at the head. The British Parliament consists of two *chambers: The House of Lords and the House of Commons. In the UK the Prime Minister is the head of the government.

5 IW. Visit your ICC search and make an official Fact File of Great Britain.
1. The national symbol of England is the red rose.

2. Mother Tereza worked at a high school in Calcutta.

3. Hannah lives in Belfast, an amazing city and the capital of Northern Ireland.

4. One of the official languages in the UK is English.

5. It’s not easy to cross the Atlantic ocean in a small boat.

6. We’d like to go to China to see the Great Wall.

7. The symbol of North Ireland is the shamrock.

8. The UK is a constitutional monarchy and a highly developed industrial country.

9. Great Britain is washed by the Atlantic Ocean in the north and in the west, and by the North Sea in the east.

**Self-Assessment**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I remember everything about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t have any problems with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think I need some more practice in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think I need a lot more practice in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’ll try to get extra practice in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Textile, aircraft and navigation equipment highly developed**

**One of the chief industries of the country shipbuilding**

**Rule**

**Official country national symbol amazing population**
OPTIONAL REVISION TASKS
Reading Comprehension and Writing

1. Read the teens’ letters and give comments on the following statements.

1. English is a major and global language all over the world.
2. London is changing day by day.
3. The most significant item is the Millennium Stadium in Wales.
4. One of the best things in Scotland is the Wallace monument.
5. Scotland is a country of natural beauty.
6. The Irish are recognized all over the world with their St. Patrick Day.
7. Northern Ireland is famous for its beautiful legends and natural sights.

I’m really proud of being English. We’ve got our own history, language, culture and traditions. My native language is English which is famous and global all over the world. The symbol of England is a red rose. London, the capital of England and Great Britain is famous for its places of interest, wonderful parks, interesting museums and historical buildings. Tourists who visit London witness how the city is changing day by day. **Diana**

I come from Wales and I am proud of being Welsh. We also have our own history, language, and culture. Millions of people visit and enjoy it every year. Cardiff, the capital of Wales, is famous for a few things, but the most significant item is the Millennium Stadium, the largest football ground in the UK. And it’s fun when there are rugby and football matches and concerts. **Andrew**

I’m Scottish. Scotland is famous for its Highlands, pretty lakes and green forests. Edinburgh, the capital of Scotland is a great city where you can see the most significant items of Scotland like the National Gallery of Scotland and the Royal Botanic Garden. One of the best things that really make my country great is the Wallace monument with exciting items about Sir William Wallace, the national hero of Scotland. **Alex**

I’m Irish. I love my language and country, its natural beauty. My country is famous for its beautiful legends, natural sights, botanic gardens, opera performances and concerts. I live in Belfast, an amazing city and it is the capital of Northern Ireland. Belfast Botanic Gardens are the most wonderful attractions for me. The Irish celebrate St. Patrick’s Day in March and it is recognized all over the world. We wear green clothes with a shamrock on, and say to one another “I’m Irish”. **Kate**
Complete the table according to the letters.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Countries</th>
<th>The natural resources/significant items</th>
<th>The most popular festivals/holidays</th>
<th>The capitals and their famous items</th>
<th>Population</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>England</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scotland</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wales</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Ireland</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Patrick’s Day</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Read the UI and Fact File boxes and search for more information.

**Useful Information**
Margaret Thatcher, the first woman Prime Minister in Europe, was born in a small English town of Grantham. Her father was a grocer and worked very hard for little money. Margaret studied Chemistry at Oxford University. In 1951 she married to a rich businessman. Margaret Thatcher became a politician in 1959, leader of the Conservative Party in 1975, and Prime Minister of Britain four years after that. She loved politics, had a strong personality and she was called “The Iron Lady”. She didn’t have time for other interests. She said she only needed four hours’ sleep a night. She was the UK’s most powerful and competent Prime Minister from 1979 to 1990.

**FACT FILE**
- The British drink on average 3.39 cups of tea each day and 1.65 cups of coffee.
- 46% of the British like doing work in the garden. Every town has one or more garden centres.
- There is a pet in nearly 50% of the 24.2 million homes in Britain.
- Many British people wear suits to the office on weekdays, but at weekends they like wearing jeans.
- There are some very good Welsh actors and singers like Anthony Hopkins, Catherina Zeta Jones and Tom Jones.
- The British are polite and tradition-loving people.

Complete the expressions and make up sentences. Sample:
1. botanic – 5. opera – 9. powerful –
2. natural – 6. fantastic – 10. competent –
3. exciting – 7. national – 11. peace loving –
4. historical – 8. significant – 12. rich –
Lesson 2. Azerbaijan-Worth Visiting!

What you’ll learn:
- What the population of Azerbaijan is
- What Azerbaijan is famous for
- What natural resources Azerbaijan has got
- What places of interest there are in Azerbaijan
- What “East or West, Home is Best!” means

REMEMBER!
- East or West, Home is Best!
- Azerbaijan is the pearl of the Caucasus!
- Azerbaijan—the gate of the East!
- Azerbaijan is the paradise! Come and see a real paradise!
- Azerbaijan is Worth Visiting!

Word File:

**jewellery** ['dʒuːəlri] (n) precious stones, ornaments.  
*She had silver hair and gold jewellery.*

**magnificent** [maɡˈnɪfɪsnt] (adj) impressively beautiful, or extravagant, breathtaking, impressive, luxurious, elegant, splendid, spectacular, glorious.

**nabat** – (n) boiled sugar candy

**patriotic** [,pætrɪˈɒtɪk] (adj) nationalist, nationalistic, having or expressing devotion to and vigorous support for one’s country.

*Today’s game will be played before a fiercely patriotic crowd.*

**pottery** ['pɔtərɪ] (n) china, crockery, ceramics, stoneware, pots, dishes, etc. made of earthenware or baked clay.

*Pottery can be broadly divided into earthenware, porcelain, and stoneware.*

**provincial** [prəˈvɪnjəl] (adj) of or concerning a province of a country or empire nonurban, rural, country; syn: regional, state, territorial, district.

**provincial** elections.

**unitary** ['jʊnɪtərɪ] (adj) a sort of wholeness or relating to a unit or units.

*To run the health service as a unitary national service.*

1 **GW. Practise the words with the sound:**

- [ə] provincial unitary pottery jewellery
- [æ] magnificent patriotic mankind bat
- [au] amount owl proud account
- [ɛə] prepare declare where nightmare
CW. Talk about the pictures looking through the UI box.
Begin like this: These places of interest are located in Azerbaijan regions. Our country Azerbaijan is one of the oldest countries with its rich and ancient history in the world. The oldest regions and towns are ….

Useful Information

Azerbaijan is a unitary constitutional republic. The country is a member state of the Council of Europe, the OSCE and the NATO Partnership for Peace (PfP) programme. It is one of the six independent Turkic-speaking states, being an active member of the Turkic Council and the TÜRKSOY community. Azerbaijan has diplomatic relations with 158 countries and holds membership in 38 international organizations. It is one of the founding members of Georgia, the Ukraine, Azerbaijan, Moldova (GUAM), the Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS) and Organization for the Prohibition of Chemical Weapons, a member of the UN since 1992. It also has the membership in the Human Rights Council established by the United Nations General Assembly (UNGA) since May 9, 2006.

REMEMBER!

NATO – The North Atlantic Treaty Organization
OSCE – Organization for Security and Co-operation in Europe (OSCE)
UN – United Nations

IW. Give comments on the poem and guess:
Who is the author of this poem?
Men know that you’re mine my birth
My nest, my refuge and my hearth
My mother, native land, dear earth,

Sever soul and body? Death but can!
Oh, Azerbaijan, my Azerbaijan!
**PW. Read the passages and give a short review searching and adding more information.**

**Famous People From Different Regions of Azerbaijan**

Gazakh is one of the most wonderful regions in Azerbaijan and the hometown of some prestigious personalities, well-known in Azerbaijan and in other countries. Poets Samad Vurgun, Molla Panah Vagif, Mirvarid Dilbazi and Nusrat Kasamanli, the scholar* Molla Vali Vridadi, the world-wide famous colonel-general, Ali-Agha Shikhlnski, who did his best to establish Azerbaijan National Army, dramatist Ismayil Shykhly, the wrestler Hasan Aliyev, the national hero Ali Mustafayev brought a great fame to this region, as well as to our country Azerbaijan. Gazakh has always been considered the land of literate people as well as ashugs. Ashig Adalat is loved in Azerbaijan for the “Yaniq Karam”, “Gazakhi” and other ashug songs.

Shaki, lying in the picturesque foothills of the southern slopes of the Greater Caucasian Range is one of the oldest regions in Azerbaijan. Ancient Shaki was a large trading centre. Nowadays Shaki is famous for its silk, pottery, jewellery and also amazing carpets. Shaki sweets such as pakhlava, nabat and peshmakh are famous in many countries. The Shaki pakhlava is made of rice flour, nuts and honey. Architectural monuments, such as Shaki Khan’s Palace, Galarsan-Geralsan Fortress are often visited by tourists. Shaki is the hometown of the most well known Azerbaijani playwright and philosopher Mirza Fatali Akhundov, the first woman opera composer of Azerbaijan Shafiga Akhundova and the great poet Bakhtiyar Vahabzadeh.

The City of Shamakhy has a rich heritage and has provided the backdrop (background, backcloth) to major political events throughout much of its two millennia of existence. It is famous for its observatory, traditional dances, the famous Shamakhy dancers, and also for giving its name to the Soumak rugs. Shamakhy is the home of some prestigious* people such as the philosopher Seyid Yahya Bakuvi, poets Seyid Azim Shirvani, Khaqani and Mirza Alakbar Sabir, the mugham singer Alim Qasimov, the writer Aziza Jafarzade, actors Aghasadig Garaybeyli and Abbas Mirza Sharifzadeh, the architect Gasim bey Hajibabaeyov and others.

**GW/IW. Project work. Find information on the Internet about Shusha, Nakhchivan, Guba, Barda, etc. and make a presentation.**

*scholar – a specialist in a particular branch of study, a distinguished academic; scientist; intellectual

*prestigious – inspiring respect and admiration; having high status; reputable, distinguished, respected
GW. Read the Fact File and UI boxes, search for more facts/information.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fact File</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Full name of the country</strong></td>
<td>The Republic of Azerbaijan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Area</strong></td>
<td>86,600 sq km.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Population</strong></td>
<td>about 10 million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Capital</strong></td>
<td>Baku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Language</strong></td>
<td>Azerbaijani</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Religion</strong></td>
<td>Muslim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>State system</strong></td>
<td>Republic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Natural resources</strong></td>
<td>oil, gas, copper, polymetals, gold, marble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Main agricultural crops</strong></td>
<td>cotton, silk, caviar, sturgeon, fruits, vegetables</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>National currency</strong></td>
<td>Azerbaijani manat / ₼</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Useful Information

Azerbaijan has an ancient and historic cultural heritage, in the fields of literature, music, sport, architecture and visual arts, operas, theatres and modern universities. Azerbaijan has a high level of human development equal to that of most Eastern European countries. It has a high rate of economic development and literacy. Azerbaijan has recently been the host of the Eurovision Contest and the European Games.

The First European Games-2015 were granted to Azerbaijan by the European Olympic Committee and were held in Azerbaijan, which is the pearl of the Caucasus. It was a big honour and responsibility for us to organize and host the First European Games. The opening of the European Games was an unforgettable milestone* in the field of sports and cultural events. European Games opened a new era and a new page not only in our history, but also in the history of the European Olympic Games. It was the greatest sporting event in Azerbaijan, as well as in Europe which was the game of peace and friendship.

GW. Complete the table on the key words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Meanings</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Sample</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>heritage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pottery</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jewellery</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foothill</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hometown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnificent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*milestone – an action or event marking a significant change or stage in development; landmark, significant event, achievement
GW. Read the letters and give your answers to the questions.

- What are teens’ reasons for living in these places?
- Which of the reasons are the most important for them?
- What arguments do they give? How do you like their arguments?
- What are your opinions about the proverb: “East or West, Home Is Best!”?

I think it doesn’t matter very much what country it might be. Now I’m dreaming of living in a place on a green hill-side. Within a 10 minute walk of a broad white sand beach. I’d like to have a lot of horses, a fertile (rich, productive) farmland and a good climate for growing a variety of fruit and vegetables. I love nature and animals very much.

Gabriella

I don’t want to live anywhere else, but in Azerbaijan. But a lot of countries attract me as a traveller. I’ve read much about European countries and I want to visit Spain. Firstly, I like its climate, hot and dry. Another reason for my choice is the Spanish people! It’s my dream to get there! Perhaps one day I’ll visit Spain, but I’ll only visit! I’m not going to live there. As the proverb says: East or West, Home Is Best! I can’t imagine my life in another country without my friends and my native land, my native language, my nature and landscape, without the Azerbaijani national cuisine!

Ismayil

I love that we have so many “English things” as a brand such as the “drinking tea” habit, the red post boxes, the double-deck buses, etc. I also admire great people such as Churchill, Elizabeth I, Jane Austen, Shakespeare and others. I’m very proud of being British! I love how we can be one big country and four separate countries, too. My country is really magnificent!

Isabella

America is my native country with great opportunities and fine weather. The best thing about America is that there are so many different peoples and cultures. Besides, Americans are patriotic people. We like our national songs and dances, wearing clothes with our national symbols. We put our flag in our classrooms, we respect and always value our national riches and symbols. I love and highly respect my country.

Sam

IW/PW. Find the meanings of the words in bold in the passages. Use them in sentences of your own.
10 PW. Think and give comments on the statements.
1. America is a country with great opportunities.
2. The English are very nice people.
3. The proverb: “East or West, Home Is Best!” doesn’t sound today.
4. Azerbaijanis are one of the most hospitable people in the world.
5. Americans are the most patriotic people in the world.
6. All tourists visiting Baku admire places of interest in the city.
7. American people like wearing clothes with their national symbols.
8. Great Britain is known all over the world for its history, tea, red boxes and black taxis.

11 IW. Search more information about the resources of Azerbaijan looking through the Fact File.

The national leader of Azerbaijan Heydar Aliyev introduced many political, cultural and economic changes and did his best for his country and his people. Heydar Aliyev became the most successful leader of the Republic. Under the leadership of Heydar Aliyev, Azerbaijan began to flourish. More oil and natural gas reserves were discovered and oil and gas pipelines were built to export Azerbaijan oil resources.

12 IW. Find the unscrambled words and give their Azerbaijani equivalent.

macentfigni- alonnati- shipndfri- hilfoot- tagerihe- fulcesscus- rioticpat- toryhis- ferleti- mrafandl- turecul- alturna-

13 PW. Choose the words describing places and use them in sentences.

picturesque natural historical charming dry clean mild scenery traditional magic creative flourish competent

14 GW. Answer the questions and explain your answers.
Then compare them with other groups.
• What are the three most interesting places in our country?
• What are the most famous tourist attractions in our country?

15 IW. Creative Work. Write an essay: Come to See Azerbaijan! You’ll Enjoy Our Cultural Heritage!
Lesson 3. Every City Has a Story

What you’ll learn:
• Information about different cities in the world
• What these cities are famous for
• What the meaning of the saying is: “Every City Has a Story!”
• Real facts about some cities
• How to use Conditional II

Word File:

abandon [ə’bændən] (v) leave, leave behind, put away, give over, stop, cease, quit, give up completely. Her mother abandoned her at an early age.
estuary [‘estjuərɪ] (n) entry, river mouth, delta. The turtles spend most of their lives in estuaries, where rivers flow into the sea.
gross [grəʊs] (adj) thick, fat, stout, obese, overweight, big.
harbour [‘haːbɔ] (n) port, dock, haven, marina; a place on the coast where vessels find shelter.
must [mʌst] (n) need, necessity, want.
sophisticated [sə’fɪstɪkeitid] (adj) 1. complex, complicated 2. precise, nice 3. developed to a high degree of complexity of a machine/system/technique, advanced, modern, experienced. Highly sophisticated computer systems.
spectacular [spek’tækjʊlə] 1. (adj) striking, picturesque, eye-catching, breathtaking, impressive, dramatic, beautiful. 2. (n) an event produced on a large scale and with striking effects.
vaporetto (n) - a canal boat, a motorboat used for public transportation in Venice. In the gallery there are videos of footage taken from a ferry in Sydney Harbour and a vaporetto in Venice.

GW. Practise the words with the sound:
[ ə ] estuary flower sanctuary flour sour
[ ə ] harbour parlour craft part heart
[ e ] pretence head reckon perfect plenty
[ æ ] spectacular map mature marriage abandon
2 CW. Talk about these places of interest using the model:

- If I had time I would go to Australia!
- If I went to Sydney I would like to see the State Opera House!
- If I won the game I would be the happiest man in the world.

3 GW. Write the correct form of the verbs in brackets and translate.

1. If I (to win) a holiday anywhere in the world, I (to go) to Rio De Janeiro.
2. If you (to go) to Nepal you (to see) Mount Everest.
3. If I (to live) in another country, I (to miss) my motherland.
4. When people (to travel), they (to try to see) places of interest.
5. If you (to be) in Disneyland, you (to relax) on beautiful beaches such as Santa Monica.
6. If they (to see) the fountains in Rome, they (to enjoy) them.
7. If I (to be) in Spain I (to live) in a small town far from big cities.
If you (to visit) **Los Angeles** you would see the world famous universal Film Studios, you would take a walk down the streets of Hollywood, you’d do a tour of the Star’s homes in Beverly Hills, you’d see Disneyland or relax on beautiful beaches such as Santa Monica, Venice or Marina del Rey.

If you **(to visit) Athens** you would be in a huge modern city. There are many monuments dating back to the dawn of civilization. You would see, of course, the Acropolis, the hill upon which the Parthenon and other important sites are located.

If you went to **Rio De Janeiro** you could enjoy a day on the Copacabana Beach and then if you (to take) tram up to the beautiful mountain called Corcovado you would see the famous statue of Christ. For any true football fan, a visit to the Maracana Stadium is a **must**.

**Baku**, called “badi kube” (the city of winds) has a long history. If you (to come) to Baku you could see many historical fortresses, prominent palaces, magnificent buildings, modern flame towers, mosques, wonderful parks, the Baku Olimpic Stadium, The Flag Pole which is the second highest in the world, Crystal Hall, H. Aliyev Palace, Heydar Aliyev Center, the Maiden Tower, one of the most mysterious architectural monuments and many other amazing places.

**Rome** – Would you like (to visit) Rome? If you (to visit) Rome you could see the most spectacular Roman sights, ancient ruins, medieval squares and delightful fountains. If you (to go) there you could learn the history, the legends and the secrets of the city.
5 PW. Look at the photos and make an interview comparing them. You can use the words in the box to describe them.

museum fortress sea mysterious prominent ancient City Walls the Shirvanshah’s Palace skyscrapers Philharmony monument

Sevda: ____________? Shaig: Old Baku and Modern Baku.
Sevda: ____________? Shaig: The first written reference to Baku dates from 885.
Sevda: ____________? Shaig: Oh, you can see a lot of changes here!
Sevda: ____________? Shaig: You’re right, it’s unbelievable.

6 IW. Match the sentences and give examples of your own.

If/Past Simple would/could
1. If my brother went on a trip, a) I would (I’d) go shopping.
2. If they had a chance, b) he would be really happy.
3. If I found a treasure, c) we’d go out.
4. If I had time, d) I’d travel round the world.
5. If Mike could find a new book about aliens, e) they would explore new lands.
6. If it didn’t rain, f) he could see a lot of places.

7 PW/IW. Choose the word that is different.
1. lake park like mountain valley 4. incredible new flexible fantastic city
2. enormous old pretty poor pool 5. luxury amazing popular ancient land
3. landmark town own country village 6. fast tiny famous hospitality major

8 PW. Find the words for these meanings and translate the expressions.
1. very impressive and beautiful 5. a tall narrow building
2. very big, enormous 6. standing out
3. a strengthened building or town 7. remarkable and surprising event
4. a column to a famous person or event 8. unbelievable
9 PW. Put the conversation in correct logical order. Then find the True/False statements.

A) 7,9,3,5,1,8,6,2,7,4  B) 3,1,9,5,6,8,7,4,2  C) 8,9,3,1,5,6,7,2,4

1. Certainly. Where would you like to visit first? I can suggest several places in Italy, Venice, for instance, the Queen of the Adriatic, the city of canals and palaces.
2. Since there are no roads or vehicles in Venice, the best ways of getting around are walking and riding on gondolas (a light flat-bottomed boat worked by one oar). Going down a Venetian canal in a gondola is an unforgettable experience. You can also get on a vaporetto, a kind of water bus that goes along the main canals. And it is a cheap and fast way to travel round Venice.
3. We’d like to spend a week in Italy. Could you help us with this?
4. Thanks a lot! You’ve been helpful. Venice is really a place worth visiting.
5. Venice sounds just the right place. And it’s always the high season in Venice. It’s really worth visiting Venice in February as there is the annual Carnival Festival. And February is much better than July or August, which is the best time to be there, because of the crowds and the heat.
6. Where would you suggest to stay in Venice?
7. Well, it can be hard to find accommodation, because of the carnival. But we can offer you a nice hotel within a ten-minutes’ walk from Piazza San Marco. It’s one of the most beautiful squares in the world, with its 500 year-old buildings and St Mark’s Basilica.
8. Hello, Travel Agency! How can I help you?
9. Great! And how can we get around (go around) in Venice?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statements</th>
<th>True</th>
<th>DS</th>
<th>False</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• It’s very hard to find a place to stay in Venice in summer.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Visitors to Venice should take a gondola ride along the canals.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• A trip by gondola is more expensive than by vaporetto.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Venice is on the Mediterranean.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Piazza San Marco is a large square with modern buildings.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10 IW. Project Work:

1. Make a booklet about a country/city (not your own) that you think is interesting. Include information about:
   • the country’s geography and climate
   • some aspects of the culture/history
   • the people who live there
   • the language of the country

2. Design a booklet. Find pictures for your booklet or draw some pictures. Include a map of the country.
Lesson 4. The Biggest and the Best!

What you’ll learn:

- The biggest places in the world
- The most famous places in the world
- What Australia is famous for
- How to form Exclamatory sentences
- The difference between Exclamatory and Interrogative sentences

Word File:

marsupial [maːˈʃjuːpjəl] 1. (adj) pouches, relating to the marsupials. 2. (n) a mammal of an order whose members are born incompletely developed and are typically carried in a pouch on the mother’s belly.

mass [mæs] 1. (n) majority, large/great number, typically large body of matter with no definite shape 2. (adj) universal, large-scale.

polyp [ˈpɒlɪp] (n) polypus, a small growth

rank [ræŋk] 1. (v) give a rank, classify, categorize, rate, grade, group, catalog, organize, arrange. 2. (n) row, line, column, procession.

He is an army officer of high rank.

Rank them in order of preference.

reef [riːf] 1. (n) metal, coral, or sand just above or below the surface of the sea 2. (v) take in one or more reefs of (a sail).

The captain ordered his men to reef the sails and lower the anchors.

swan [swən] (n) a large waterbird with a long flexible neck, short legs, webbed feet, a broad bill.

unique [juːˈniːk] (adj) unlike anything else; distinct, special, wonderful, admirable, remarkable.

The situation was unique in modern politics.

1 CW. Practise the words with the same sound:

[ɪ] polyp early property ability pretty
[æ] mass rank manage mandatory tap
[k] unique queue typically rock criticise
[θ] theme health theoretical breath thorn
[f] philanthropist reef phonetics phrase fate
GW. Talk about these places of interest looking through the Fact File.

The Baku TV Tower built in 1996, is a free standing concrete telecommunications tower. With a height of 310 metres (1017 feet), it is the tallest structure in Azerbaijan and the tallest reinforced concrete* building in the Caucasus. The tower has become one of the most prominent landmarks of Baku, often in the establishing films shot/set in the city. There is a wonderful view of Baku from the TV Tower.

**FACT FILE**

**One World Trade Center**
New York City, USA
541 meters (1.776 feet)
It was completed in 2013.

**Baku TV Tower**

**Empire State Building**
New York City, USA
381 metres (1.250 feet) It was completed in 1931.

**Sears Tower**
Chicago, USA
442 meters (1.450 feet) It was completed in 1974.

**Petronas Towers Kuala Lumpur**
Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia
452 meters (1.483 feet) It was completed in 1996.

**Jin Mao Building**
Shanghai, China
421 metres (1.379 feet) It was completed in 1998.

**GRAMMAR SPOT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Questions</th>
<th>Exclamatory sentence with What!</th>
<th>Exclamatory sentence with How!</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>How/What?</td>
<td>What a/an + adj + singular countable noun</td>
<td>How+adj/adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· How big is</td>
<td>· What a big city Singapore is!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singapore?</td>
<td>· What a high mountain Everest is!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>· How high is</td>
<td>· What a boring movie it is!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mount Everest?</td>
<td>· What a horrible weather it is!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*reinforced concrete – concrete in which wire mesh or steel bars are embedded to increase its tensile strength; reinforced
The name Australia comes from the Latin word *Australis*, meaning southern. Australia is the only country that’s also a continent. In area, it ranks as the sixth largest country and smallest continent. The national capital and the largest inland city is Canberra. More than 80 percent of Australia’s people live in cities and towns. The northern third of the Australian continent lies in the tropics and is warm or hot all year round. Originally, all the world’s continents were part of one huge land mass*. The region that’s now Australia became separated from this land mass about 200 million years ago and, as a result, the animal life of Australia developed differently from that of other continents. For example, marsupials are Australia’s most unusual and famous creatures. Australia has about 150 species of marsupials. The kangaroo family includes about 50 species. They range in size from huge red and grey kangaroos to tiny creatures smaller than a domestic cat. The koala, a native of Australia’s eastern forests, was near extinction in the 1920s. Today, this is a protected species. Australia has also about 700 species of native birds. They include the world’s only black swans. Along the northeast coast of the continent lies the Great Barrier Reef, the largest group of coral* reefs in the world. This is a unique area with an unmatched (not matched or equaled; unequaled) variety and quantity of coral polyps which create a beautiful sea garden. The first Australians, a dark–skinned people known today as Aborigines, had lived in Australia for at least 40,000 years before the first white settlers arrived. In the late 1700s Great Britain settled a prison colony in Australia and most Australian people are of British origin. They brought many British customs with them. Nevertheless, the Australian people have developed their own way of life.

---

*mass – 1. relating to large numbers of people or things; widespread, large-scale. 2. typically large body of matter with no definite shape; pile, heap

coral – reddish tint (of a lobster or scallop)
Paul: I’m going to Australia next year.
Kelly: Oh, really! What a great idea!
Paul: I have seen on the internet that there is not much pollution in Australia. And how clean and beautiful the beaches are there!
Kelly: Oh, yes. Australia has some of the most famous beaches in the world - like Bondi Beach.
Paul: I’m planning to be there too. I have seen the beaches on the internet. How clean they are! What else would you suggest I should see?
Kelly: Well, the Great Barrier Reef is there. Do you know how long the reef is? It’s the longest coral reef in the world.
Paul: Wow! It sounds wonderful. How lucky you are to be an Australian!
Kelly: Thanks, but actually, I’m not an Australian, I am a New Zealander, I just live in Australia!

4 PW. Listen to the dialogue paying attention to the sentences with What and How. Act it out.

5 IW/GW. Write about our country looking through the Fact File and International Overview boxes.
6 CW. Say as many sentences and expressions as you can starting with *What* and *How*.

*Model:* • What a beautiful waterfall it is!
• What large rocks these are!
• What a blue sky it is!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>describing continents</th>
<th>describing countries / cities</th>
<th>describing mountains</th>
<th>describing forests</th>
<th>describing seas / rivers</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• attractive</td>
<td>:</td>
<td>:</td>
<td>:</td>
<td>:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7 GW. Sort the words out and put them in suitable columns.

big small huge natural amazing far beautiful thick warm shallow rocky attractive high deep cold famous wonderful magnificent green low ancient known marvellous modern delightful favourite colourful enormous luxury commercial incredible multinational bushy

8 PW. Write questions to the answers and practice.

1 A: ____________________?
   B: Angel Falls is 979 meters high.

2 A: ____________________?
   B: California is about 424,000 square kilometers.

3 A: ____________________?
   B: The Nile is 6,853 kms. long.

4 A: ____________________?
   B: The Araz is 1.072 kms long.

9 IW. Fill in the table according to the passage about Australia. *(page 144)*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Climate</th>
<th>Flora / Fauna</th>
<th>Population</th>
<th>History</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10 IW. Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences.

1. How Britain is big?
2. How a small state Vatican is!
3. How high is Mount Everest!
4. How far London is from Baku?
5. What long the Nile is!
6. What the Angel Falls high is!
7. What is huge a continent!
8. What is the Nile long river!
9. How is deep the Grand Canyon?
10. How a cold country New Zealand is!
1. Uluru discovered/discovered by Aborigines belongs to the Aboriginal Pitjantjara people.

2. The first Australians, a dark-skinned people known/knowing today as Aborigines, had lived in Australia for at least 40,000 years before the first white settlers* arrived.

3. You can see beautiful things in Uluru also calling/called Ayers Rock.

4. The koala is a protected/protecting species.

REM EMBER!

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>e+ed</th>
<th>double consonant+ed</th>
<th>consonant +y→ i+ed</th>
<th>vowel+y+ed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>liked</td>
<td>preferred</td>
<td>carried</td>
<td>played</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hated</td>
<td>stopped</td>
<td>studied</td>
<td>stayed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrived</td>
<td>dropped</td>
<td>cried</td>
<td>enjoyed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Spelling Rules

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>discovered</th>
<th>completed</th>
<th>chatted</th>
<th>watched</th>
<th>spent</th>
<th>represented</th>
<th>jogged</th>
<th>unmatched</th>
<th>built</th>
<th>protected</th>
<th>invaded</th>
<th>brought</th>
<th>hated</th>
<th>lived</th>
<th>called</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[d]</td>
<td>[t]</td>
<td>[id]</td>
<td>none</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*settler – a person who settles in an area, typically one with no or few previous inhabitants; newcomer, migrant, emigrant, colonist
1. ... is a city of glass skyscrapers. One of them is the incredible Burj Khalifa skyscraper. It is 828 metres high and has got more than 160 floors. You can see it from about 100 kilometres away! It has got a luxury hotel, offices, restaurants, swimming pools, libraries, a gym and 900 expensive flats. From the visitor area on the 124th floor, the cars in the streets below are tiny. The tower has got 57 very fast lifts. In the Burj Khalifa area there are parks and a large lake. There is a big shopping centre next to the tower. This enormous building has got over 1,200 luxury shops. The city of Dubai is a fantastic place!

2. ... is one of the most exciting cities in the world. The name Las Vegas means the “meadows” in Spanish. But meadows are the only thing that you can’t find here. “The strip” (stripe), in the center of town, is five kilometres of the most extravagant hotels you’ll ever see, including replicas (duplicates) of the Eiffel Tower, the Egyptian Pyramids and ancient Roman Palaces. It uses almost 24,000 kilometres of neon lights.

3. ... is a tropical paradise which is located in the warm blue waters to the southeast of Thailand. It is the kingdom’s second largest island after Phuket, but it was unknown to tourists until a few years ago. It’s not difficult to reach from Bangkok, it is covered with coconut trees and brightly-coloured flowers and is surrounded by white sandy beaches and turquoise seas. You can find great shopping places, luxury restaurants and exciting night-life here.

4. ... is the location for a number of Hollywood films, including “Indiana Jones” and “the last Crusade”. The city of ... was built in rocky cliffs more than 2,000 years ago. It was an important commercial city many many years ago. Temples, palaces and a huge amphitheatre were all cut out of the cliffs, and their amazing colours give the city rose - red appearance.
2 Find the cities and complete the statements.
   1. This is the location for a number of Hollywood films. It is ...
   2. There are over 1,200 luxury shops in this incredible skyscraper. It is ...
   3. This city was built on rocky cliffs more than 2,000 years ago. It is ...
   4. You can find an exciting night life in this place. It is ...
   5. It is a city of glass skyscrapers. It is ...
   6. This place has got luxury restaurants, offices, libraries, swimming pools and 900 expensive flats. It is ...
   7. There is a tropical paradise located in the warm blue waters to the southeast of this place.

3 Speak about the facts with the given figures. There are some figures that are different.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Metropolitan</th>
<th>Amazing</th>
<th>Extravagant</th>
<th>Paradise</th>
<th>Turquoise</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1812</td>
<td>4,000</td>
<td>134</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>551</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>828</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>58.9</td>
<td>1912</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Find the definitions of the words in bold and use them in sentences.

metropolitan amazing extravagant paradise turquoise fantastic amphitheatre prefecture cosmopolitan polite estuary patriotic spectacular significant powerful unitary

4 Find the definitions of the words in bold and use them in sentences.

5 Project. Make a poster about a famous city/a capital city. Follow the steps in the Project Checklist.

   Project Checklist
   Find information on the Internet about:
   • where the city is                  • what the population is
   • what the main language is          • what the sights are

6 Write a sophisticated description for any city.
   When tourists go on holiday they want to visit a “real” country. They want “unspoiled landscapes, traditions and people who are welcoming yet different”.
   • What do tourists expect from visiting these cities?
   • What are your views?

   *sophisticated – advanced, modern, the latest, new
**Vocabulary Map**

1. Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In the field of ...</th>
<th>What I learned</th>
<th>How I’ll implement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Writing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logical thinking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical thinking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammar section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other things</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Make a vocabulary map and write the words you learned around the unit in the box. You can add the meanings in your language.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning/Synonym</th>
<th>Opposite/Antonym</th>
<th>Useful Phrases/Expressions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Think and sort out the words according to the parts of speech.

- attractiveness
- same
- the
- relax
- ideal
- coral
- and
- marvellous
- my
- provide
- largest
- prefecture
- vaporetto
- shipbuilding
- reign
- many
- usually
- enormous
- impressive
- gondola
- abandon
- tower
- luxury
- friendly
- to
- everywhere
- spectacular
- hospitality
- valley
- creature
- swan
- polyp
- marsupial
- rank
- tiny

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4 Write the sentences using Participle I or Participle II instead of a clause.

Sample: • The place that is situated in the Highlands attracts tourists.
• The place situated in the Highlands attracts many tourists.

1. The lands that were discovered by Columbus were rich in gold.
2. The cartoons that were created by W. Disney have many funny characters.
3. Koh Samui which is located in the warm blue waters of Thailand is a tropical paradise.
4. The visitors who keep going to Burj Khalifa are impressed by this amazing skyscraper.
5. The city of Petra that was built in rocky cliffs more than 2,000 years ago, was once an important commercial city.
6. The Tower of London, which was built nine centuries ago, is a strong fortress.
7. The people who visit the tropical paradise admire this place.

5 Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>City</th>
<th>Symbols</th>
<th>Places of interest</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Azerbaijan</td>
<td>Baku</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>England</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>America</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scotland</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 Think and match the words.

1. not common                      a) hospitable
2. welcoming                      b) enormous
3. hurting or destroying           c) luxury
4. impossible to believe, amazing  d) fantastic
5. immense                         e) magnificent
6. tremendous                      f) incredible
7. splendor                        g) marvellous
8. miraculous                      h) violent
9. spectacular                     i) special
Lesson 1. Be a Doctor for Yourself!

What you’ll learn:

• About good habits and healthy living
• How to avoid bad habits
• Some good advice on being a doctor to/for yourself
• If we can be our own doctors

Word File:

digest [di’dʒest] 1. (n) a substance or mixture obtained by digestion.

2. (v) break down (food) in the alimentary canal into substances that can be absorbed and used by the body.

digestive [di’dʒestɪv] 1. (adj) of or relating to the process of digesting food.

2. (n) a food or medicine that aids or promotes the digestion of food.

We were served (with) cookies and digestive biscuits.

fizzy [‘fɪzi] (adj) (of a beverage) containing bubbles of gas; sparkling, carbonated, gassy, bubbly. Fizzy mineral water.

moist [mɔɪst] (adj) damp/dampish, humid, wet/wettish or slightly wet.

The air was moist and heavy.

remedy [‘remɪdi] 1. (v) put/set right, cure, relieve, amend.

By the time a problem becomes obvious, it may be almost too late to remedy it. 2. (n) cure, medication, treatment, a medicine for a disease or injury.

Herbal remedies for aches and pains.

smooth [smuːð] (adj) plane, flat, unwrinkled, silky, having an even and regular surface or consistency.

spot [spɒt] (n) mark, dot, a small round mark, differing in colour or texture from the surface around it.

1 IW. Listen and repeat the words with the same sound.

[θ] thoroughly smooth path thorn thin

[ð] there smooth bathe those together

[ɔɪ] moist hoist employ choice spoil

[ɔ] roll pottery spot dot complex
2 GW. Look at the pictures and write the statements appropriately in the table.

- Walking in the open air
- Having salty things
- Having low-fat products
- Doing regular exercises
- Having fun/laughing more
- Drinking fizzy drinks
- Eating chips/junk food
- Combining different food
- Digesting food well
- Drinking water during the meals
- Eating more diary products
- Going to sleep late at night
- Going to bed with a full stomach
- Spending less time in front of TV
- Being in movement after eating
- Having more pure liquid during the day
- Avoiding junk food as less as possible
- Having more sugary products

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive Habits</th>
<th>Negative Habits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3 PW. Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

1. If you want to build a healthy body, ... .
2. ... you’ll put on weight.
3. If you eat low-fat products, ... .
4. ..., you’ll build your muscles.
5. If you do more exercises every day, ... .
6. If you have fizzy drinks, ... .
7. If you eat more fruits and vegetables, ... .

4 PW. Read the jokes and act them out.

1. Reporter: What would you do if you knew that you’ll live that long?  
   Centenarian: I’d take better care of myself.

2. Doctor: If you have healthy food and a healthy life and never smoke  
you may live to be 100.  
   Patient: No good, doctor.  
   Doctor: Why not?  
   Patient: I’m nearly 103.

Note: A centenarian / Golden Oldie is a person who lives to be 100 years old.
GW. Read the extract from a health magazine and find True/False sentences.

The Three Parts of The Body

A) A Tongue
A healthy tongue should be smooth and moist and its colour should be pale red. If it’s rough, or dry or a different colour, these are signs of poor health. Another sign of bad health is when there are cracks* in the tongue. Cracks may be of different kinds, and each kind of crack shows a different health problem. If there are cracks in the middle of the tongue this means you have a weak digestive system- you do not digest food easily and well. And perhaps you might feel tired, and have little energy, in the middle of the day. In this case everybody should:
- Learn how to “combine” food!
- Eat more soup and vegetable salad!

If you have horizontal cracks in your tongue, this means you need B Vitamins, and that you have low energy. If you want to solve these problems you should:
- Eat more salad of lettuce, parsley* and spinach!
- Drink mint tea! Have herbal tea!

B) Fingernails
If you can see white spots in your fingernails, you should know that your body doesn’t have enough zinc. You need to take action to raise the level of zinc in your body. To do this you should:
- Eat pumpkin seeds and sunflower seeds as snack between meals!

C) Eyes
Dark circles under the eyes are a sign of food allergies: your body doesn’t want certain kinds of food. They also show that your kidneys* are weak, and do not do their job well. To remedy this problem you should:
- Eat different foods every day!
- Drink two glasses of fruit juice per day!

1. A healthy tongue should be pink in colour.
2. If you have dark circles under your eyes, it’s good for your health.
3. White spots on the nails are the signs of food allergies.
4. It’s useful to eat high fat food products.
5. Drink a lot of liquid at mealtime.
6. Vegetable salad is easy to digest.
7. If you’ve horizontal cracks in your tongue it means you’ve low energy.
8. Fresh fruit, vegetables, open air and still water are good for health.

*crack – a line on the surface of smth along which it has split without breaking into separate parts; cleft, chap, breach
*parsley – herb with aromatic leaves and for garnishing food
*kidney – a pair of organs in the abdominal cavity excreting urine
Hi, I’m Alex. I’m 12. I’m a bit overweight. I try not to eat much, but it doesn’t help. Mum says I eat too much junk food, like chips, hamburgers, cheeseburgers. And I like drinking fizzy drinks, not natural juice or pure water. Could you give me some advice, please?

Hi, I’m Janet. I’m 14 years old. I think I’m healthy, but I have some digestive problems. I also like eating more sugary products and can’t stop eating them. As I get fatter, I do my best to do morning exercises and not to eat breakfast. What do you think, am I wrong or right?
Lesson 2. How Old Is Your Body?

What you’ll learn:

• If our body is the same as our calendar age
• What we should do if our body age is older than our calendar age
• What we should do to look younger than our calendar age
• What Rapid Eye Movement is, and its importance
• How much sleep we need a day

Word File:

calculate [‘kælkjulett] (v) 1. mean, aim, design. His last words were calculated to wound her.
2. suppose, believe. After accumulating enough data, we calculated that each person spent at least a full minute in a stall.
3. estimate, count, determine the amount.

contain [kən’ten] (v) keep, capture, carry, have or hold (someone or something) within.
The coffee cans once contained a full pound of coffee.

stimulate [‘stimjulett] (v) 1. raise levels of physiological or nervous activity.
2. encourage, excite
3. afford, admit, appreciate.

tense [‘tens] (adj) intense, strained, uncomfortable, troubled

irritable [ɪ’rit(ə)bl] (adj) moody, annoyed, nervous

1 GW. Write the words in the right column and pronounce them correctly.

crease stimulate contain London upper visit cable
cricket calculate solution praise sophisticated maize
amazing present flooding blood bump tense catch

[k] crease
[s] tense
[z] visit
[ʌ] blood
### 2. Think and do the quiz looking through the UI box.

#### Useful Information

How old are you? How old is your body? The answer to these two questions isn’t always the same. Our body age can be much younger or much older than our calendar age (even twenty years different). We can now calculate our body age by answering questions about the way we live. If our body age is older than our calendar age, we should try to change our lifestyle. But anyway, do your best to be in the open air most of the time and have a very active lifestyle. Give preference to fresh food products: diary products, fruits and vegetables. Take good care of your health to keep fit. As in the saying: “An apple a day keeps the doctor away!”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. How much do you walk a day?</th>
<th>A) a lot</th>
<th>B) quite a lot</th>
<th>C) not much</th>
<th>D) very little</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. How much sport and exercise do you do a week?</td>
<td>A) a lot</td>
<td>B) quite a lot</td>
<td>C) a little</td>
<td>D) none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. How much fast food do you eat?</td>
<td>A) I eat too much</td>
<td>B) I eat a little</td>
<td>C) I don’t eat much</td>
<td>D) I don’t eat any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. How many portions of fruit and vegetables do you eat per day?</td>
<td>A) only a few</td>
<td>B) quite a lot</td>
<td>C) a lot</td>
<td>D) few</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. How much water do you drink?</td>
<td>A) a lot</td>
<td>B) quite a lot</td>
<td>C) a little</td>
<td>D) little</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. What’s your worst diet habit?</td>
<td>A) I eat too much fat</td>
<td>B) I drink too much</td>
<td>C) I eat too many sweet things</td>
<td>D) I eat much junk food</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. How would you describe your character?</td>
<td>A) I’m very positive</td>
<td>C) I’m not patient</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B) I’m not positive enough</td>
<td>D) I’m quite pessimistic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. How would you describe your stress level?</td>
<td>A) I’m too stressed</td>
<td>C) I’m stressed, but it’s under control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B) I’m quite relaxed</td>
<td>D) I’m not relaxed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. How much time do you spend with your friends?</td>
<td>A) little</td>
<td>B) quite a lot</td>
<td>C) a little</td>
<td>D) none</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. How much time do you have for yourself?</td>
<td>A) very little</td>
<td>B) quite a lot</td>
<td>C) not enough</td>
<td>D) much</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sleep is one of the body’s most mysterious experiences. Scientists don’t completely understand the process, but it seems that all living beings need some sleep. And some need a lot more than others.

Sleep is Important

A) There are five stages of sleep: stages 1, 2, 3, 4 and REM. In stages 1 to 4 our body becomes more relaxed. Our muscles and heart rate slow down and our brain becomes less active. Stage 5 is called REM sleep. Our heart beats faster and our eyes move quickly in different directions. We dream during this stage and we can’t move at all—probably to stop us from doing the actions in our dreams.

B) An average person spends almost a third of their life sleeping! Is it a waste of time? Scientists believe that when the heart and brain slow down, the body is recovering after the day’s work. They also think that REM sleep is important for memory and learning—babies have twice as much REM sleep as adults.

C) On average an adult needs about 7-8 hours’ sleep every day. A baby needs 12-16. In the animal world, bats sleep for about 20 hours every day. But a giraffe sleeps for only 30 minutes or an hour per day.

REM = Rapid Eye Movement

GW/PW. Read and find True/False statements. Give your comments.

1. Children should sleep 8-10 hours every day.
2. On average people spend almost a third of their life walking.
3. Adults should sleep 7-8 hours a day.
4. In stages 3 to 4 our body becomes less relaxed.
5. Giraffes sleep more than bats.
6. In stages 1 to 4 our muscles and heart rate slow down and our brain becomes more passive.
7. REM sleep is important for memory.
5. Where can you be found on a sunny day?
   a) In front of the TV, with my favourite food in my hand.
   b) Out with my friends.

6. If you have to go upstairs, what do you do?
   a) I jog up the stairs.
   b) I go directly to the lift.

7. How do you feel about chocolate?
   a) Chocolate makes life worth living.
   b) I know it’s not good for health and I avoid eating chocolate.

8. How often do you take exercises?
   a) At least three times a week, for an hour.
   b) Now and then, but not on a regular basis.

7. **Write a paragraph:** “Why We Need REM Sleep.”
OPTIONAL REVISION TASKS

Reading Comprehension and Writing

1. GW. Listen to the paragraphs and answer the questions.

Shahin

Like everybody I’m too busy! For me there aren’t enough hours in a day. I love my job, but I work too much (sometimes I spend 14 hours a day in the studio). I often feel a bit tense and irritable. I am inactive, because I don’t have time to exercise. I know, sleeping enough, eating healthily and regularly, taking regular exercise is a good way to live and stay healthy.

I’m going to be a supermodel. So, how I look is important to me. I try not to eat much. I don’t eat junk food and I try to eat a lot of fruit and vegetables. I know they really contain a lot of vitamins that are good for health. They are good and useful for our body. I drink enough water. I have healthy skin and teeth. Being fit and looking good is being healthy for me, that’s why I’m going to dance classes, too.

Khadija

I think some people worry about what they eat. I never worry about my health. Maybe I’ll pay more attention to my health when I grow up. When you are a teenager, eating healthily isn’t cool. All my friends eat chips and hamburgers at school. Junk food tastes so nice and you want to eat it. I also drink a lot of coffee.

Mehri

I always exercise and eat healthy food. I am not slim, I’m a bit plump, but I don’t feel concerned. I think, I have the right weight and my weight may disappear when I grow up. It’s more important to be healthy. Feeling good about yourself means being healthy. At the same time I always try to think about positive things.

Why...

1. does Mehri eat healthy food?
2. is Khadija happy with her appearance?
3. is Shahin inactive?
4. does Mehri always think about positive things?
5. doesn’t Asif worry about his life?
6. does Khadija go to dance classes?
7. does Shahin feel tense and irritable?
8. does Asif like his lifestyle?

2. PW. Make solutions looking through the samples.

Avoid sadness!

Solutions

Don’t eat too much fat!

Try to be positive!

Drink more water!

Walk in the open air!

Don’t sit too much!
3 GW. Fill in the table according to Task 1, page 160.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The good things that teens do</th>
<th>The bad things that teens do</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 PW/IW. Choose the correct one explaining your choice.
   1. How much/many coffee do you drink?
   2. I don’t eat much/many vegetables.
   3. Jane eats a lot of/many bread.
   4. My sister is quite/too/much pessimistic.
   5. How much/many tea do you drink a day?
   6. My brother works too many/much/little hours.
   7. Kate has got a little/few/many/much close friends. She is happy.
   8. My grandfather eats too much/many/few meat. He’s fat.
   9. To be in the open air is very many/much important for being healthy.
  10. We should eat many/much healthy food.

5 IW. Think and match the halves.

1. positive  a) encourage
2. patient  b) knowing sb very well
3. stimulate  c) expecting bad things to happen
4. relaxed  d) waiting for a long time or accept annoying behaviour
5. pessimistic  e) feeling confident and hopeful
6. irritable  f) calm and not anxious
7. tense  g) being nervous or worried
8. close  h) getting annoyed easily, showing anger

6 IW. Which one/ones doesn’t/don’t fit the others?
   1. optimistic, irritable, happiness, relaxed, tense, fat
   2. pessimistic, merry, violence, vigilant, open-minded
   3. positive, thin, impatient, plump, anxious, freedom, free
   4. unhealthy, patient, close, worry, worried, confident

7 IW. Project Work. Write your own “Golden Rules” for keeping healthy and defend them with convincing arguments.
Lesson 3. Laughing for a Better Life!

What you’ll learn:
- What ways are the best ways to be healthy
- How laughter can help people to stay healthy
- Why laughter is good for people
- How to use prepositions/postpositions correctly

What File:

alter ['ɔ:ltə] (v) change, vary, transform, make different. 
We had to alter our plans.

bump (into) ['bʌmp in[to] (v) hit, crash into, knock against, run into
I almost bumped into him.

chuckle ['ʃʌkl] (n) giggle, snicker, titter.
I chuckled at the astonishment on her face.

2. (n) wrinkle, a line or ridge produced on paper or cloth by folding, pressing, or crushing it.

fake [feɪk] (adj) false, invalid.
I hate those who support fake relations.

laughter ['laːftə] (n) laughing, chuckling, giggling, tittering.
Burst into laughter.

nutrient ['njuːtrɪənt] (n) food supply, a substance that provides nourishment essential for growth and the maintenance of life.

1 GW. Write the words in the right column and pronounce them correctly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>truck</th>
<th>chuckle</th>
<th>sport</th>
<th>nephew</th>
<th>unitary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>new</td>
<td>bump</td>
<td>blood</td>
<td>telephone</td>
<td>fake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alter</td>
<td>photo</td>
<td>always</td>
<td>nutrient</td>
<td>fall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laughter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[f]      [ɔː]   [ʌ]      [juː]

- photo
- sport
- bump
- new
Both the British and the Americans value a sense of humour and highly appreciate people who have it. The two sayings: “No Humour, no soul!” and “Better poor than no humour!” express this idea. Laughter is the best medicine and always reduces stress. When we laugh the muscles of the face crease, massaging blood vessels*, which supply the brain, and stimulate blood flow. This increases the amount of nutrients and oxygen that our brains receive and this alters our mood. Psychologist Robert Holden, Britain’s first laughter therapist, who opened a “laughter clinic” in Birmingham, says: “We all have the idea that happiness is something we’ll know when we bump into it. Humour is an essential part of that. We now know that one minute’s chuckling is worth 40 minutes of deep relaxation.”

**REMEMBER AND COMPARE!**

- be angry about/at smth
- be annoyed at/with/by
- be concerned about/by
- be shocked by
- be pleased with/by
- be nervous about

- be angry with/at sb
- be bored with/by
- be surprised by/at
- be scared of
- be upset about/by
- be fed up with

*blood vessel – a tubular structure carrying blood through the tissues and organs; a vein, artery, or capillary*
Laughing is Useful

1. Do you want to live a happier, less stressful life? Try laughing for no reason at all. That’s how thousands of people start their day at Laughter Clubs around the world – and many doctors now think that having a good laugh might be one of the best ways to stay healthy.

2. The first Laughter Club was started in Mumbai, India, in 1995 by Dr Madan Kataria. “Young children laugh about 300 times a day. Adults laugh between 7 and 15 times a day,” says Dr Kataria. “Everyone’s naturally good at laughing – it’s the universal language. We want people to feel happy with their lives.” There are now more than 500 laughter Clubs in India and over 1,300 worldwide.

3. Many doctors in the West are also interested in the effects of laughter on our health. According to School of Medicine in California, laughter reduces stress in the body, improves our defences against illness by about 40% and is very good for the heart.

4. So, what happens at a laughter Club? I went along to my nearest club in south London to find out. I was nervous about it, to be honest I wasn’t keen on the idea of laughing with a group of strangers, and I was worried about looking stupid. First, our laughter teacher told us to clap our hands and say “ha ha ha,” while looking at each other. You know that our bodies can’t tell the difference between fake laughter and real laughter, so they still produce the same healthy chemicals.

5. Amazingly, it works. After ten minutes everybody in the room was laughing for real – and some people just couldn’t stop! At the end of the class I was surprised by how relaxed and calm I felt. So if you’re upset about something at work or just fed up with your daily routine, then start laughing. You’ll be very pleased with the results.

A) It worked for me - try it yourself! B) Why laughter is good for you.
C) Start the day with a laugh D) My first laughter class
E) How Laughter Clubs began

GW. Match the topics a-e with the paragraphs 1-5 and retell the content. Pay attention to the words in italics and explain their meaning.

GW. Fill in the gaps according to the text and translate.

1. The first ... Club was in Mumbai, India.
2. Children laugh ... than adults.
3. There are ... Laughter Clubs in the world.
4. Doctors think laughing helps people stay ... .
5. Fake laughter is ... for your health.
6. Many people start their day ... .
7. Laughter reduces stress in the body and improves ... .
5 PW. Put correct prepositions/postpositions for these adjectives looking through the article. Use them in sentences.

Model: • I am good at learning languages.
      • Isabella feels happy with her exam results.
      • Doctors say that some people are worried about their health.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to be good</th>
<th>to be nervous</th>
<th>to be surprised</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be happy</td>
<td>to be keen</td>
<td>to be upset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be interested</td>
<td>to be worried</td>
<td>to be fed up</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 IW. Write a paragraph and design solutions. Begin like this:

We should try to practise laughing by being positive during the day. Having a positive mood/spirit depends on us. If not laughter, try to smile and avoid sadness. Start the day with jokes. We all have a sense of humour and everyone laughs when they hear jokes. Azerbaijani people love jokes, too. Shaki jokes are very popular in our country.

- Let’s have fun!
- Practice more Shaki jokes!
- More laughter, less stress!

7 GW/PW. Project Work. Choose one of the statements and say the main idea.

- Laughter stimulates blood flow.
- Humour prolongs life.
- People who want to be healthy, should enjoy themselves and laugh more.

8 IW. 1. Write: “Laughter reduces stress” and explain your ideas.
What can you do to live a happier life with much laughter?
2. Search and write some Shaki jokes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Self-Assessment Description of Achievement</th>
<th>Level Reached</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Excellent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• answer the questions about the best ways</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of happy life</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• take part in discussion on the topic of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>happiness in life</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• use prepositions correctly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can read and understand:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• importance of laughter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• paragraphs and match them with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appropriate titles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I can:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• build up sentences using new words</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• create a paragraph about a happy life</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
OPTIONAL REVISION TASKS
Reading Comprehension and Writing

1. Read the UI box and explain the words in the italics. You can look them up in the dictionary if needed.

Useful Information

- **Health Care in Azerbaijan**
  Medicine in Azerbaijan serves for protecting health and prosperity of citizens of the Republic of Azerbaijan. Reforms in the sphere of medical care and direction of health care system are parts of a global strategic development programme of economic and social infrastructure. This programme is based on principles of establishment of high life democratic society with market economy Hospitals & Medical Centres in Azerbaijan. Now there are some medical clinics in Baku that have the comparable quality to those in Western countries.

- **National Health Service in the UK**
  The British National Health Service came into existence in 1948, to give completely free medical treatment of every kind to everyone. Since then, charges have been brought in for prescriptions. Children, pregnant women, old people and the poor don’t pay some of these charges.

- **National Health Service in the USA**
  In the US the medical system is private. However, there are a number of government-sponsored programmes such as Medicare and Medicaid which provide health coverage for the elderly, the infirm* and the unemployed. Because costs are very high, the only way people can benefit from medical treatment is through insurance paid by the company or institution they work for.

2. Think and complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Sample</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>insurance</td>
<td>not physically or mentally strong, especially through age or illness; weak, unwell, sick</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treatment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>establishment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prosperity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benefit</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comparable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verdict</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>global</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>serve</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*infirm – not physically or mentally strong, especially through age or illness; weak, unwell, sick
Homeopathy was invented in Germany about 200 years ago. Homeopathic doctors believe that the symptoms of an illness are signs that the body is trying to cure itself. To cure on illness, they give the patient something that produces the same symptoms in a healthy person. Before a substance is used as a homeopathic remedy, it is tested by giving small doses of it to healthy person to see what symptoms develop. For example, onions cause your eyes and nose to produce water. To cure colds, therefore homeopathy doctors use an extract from onions. Sometimes, homeopathic doctors use dangerous poisons as medicines, but they dilute (make liquid) all these many thousands of times so that they are harmless.

Critics say that there is no scientific support for homeopathy, and that in many cases the illness would disappear naturally anyway. They also say it’s possible that believing “a medicine will work” can help the mind to cure some simple illnesses. Homeopathy doctors, on the other hand, say that there is plenty of evidence that homeopathy works-and millions of people who take homeopathic remedies agree with them. Tests also have shown that animals can be cured with homeopathic medicine, and this, they say, proves that it cannot simply be because people believe in it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>Country of origin</th>
<th>Age</th>
<th>What happens?</th>
<th>How does it work?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• homeopathy</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• other</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td>•</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Homeopathy** – a system of treating diseases or conditions using very small amounts of the substance that causes the disease or condition.

**Find True / False or DS sentences.**
1. The medicines are diluted many thousands of times.
2. In many cases the illness will disappear naturally anyway.
3. Critics say that there is a lot of scientific support for homeopathy.
4. Tests say that animals also can be cured with homeopathic medicine.
5. The medicine produces the symptoms of the illness in a healthy person.
6. Hydrotherapy was invented about 300 years ago.

**Project. Write a paragraph. “What will you do during summer holidays in order to take care of your health?”**
1. Complete the table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In the field of ...</th>
<th>What I learned</th>
<th>How I’ll implement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Listening</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Writing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Logical thinking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical thinking</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammar section</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other things</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Vocabulary Map

2. Make a vocabulary map and write the words you learned around the unit in the box. You can add the meanings in your language.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Words</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Meaning/Synonym</th>
<th>Opposite/Antonym</th>
<th>Useful Phrases/Expressions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Think and sort out the words according to the parts of speech.

panic moist smooth digest out because if satisfying there allergy of tongue fingernail among reckon cash out medical junk which able pleasantly rough must healthy fizzy happily

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Adverb</th>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Çap üçün deyil Çap üçün deyil
Sandra always ate well. One day, at college, she suddenly felt sick. She went to the doctor. The doctor asked her what she had eaten. Sandra answered that she had eaten fast or ... (1). And she liked drinking ... (2) drinks and eating chips and hamburgers nearly every day. Sandra put on ... (3), and her skin was awful. She had many spots and she looked really ...(4). Sandra was often weak, felt ill and had ... (5). The doctor said: “I’m not surprised, with all the food you eat and drink, it’s a miracle you are well now. Your ...(6) must be really weak now. You should ...(7). Now you should really go on ... (8)”. 

Read and answer the questions. 
1. How can you find out about people’s health? 
2. How can you tell how healthy someone is? 
3. Who can help us to keep fit? 
4. What are signs of food allergies? 
5. How should a healthy tongue look? 
6. Why are vegetables good for health? 
7. What do you have to eat if your body needs zinc? 
8. What do we have to do if we want to avoid such problems? 
9. What will you do during your summer holidays in order to be healthy and fit?
With the arrival of the new millennium London’s face has changed. From now on, the UK’s capital is going to be an even more exciting place to visit.

The observation wheel erected on the bank of the River Thames is more than double the height of Big Ben! It’s called the London Eye and on a clear day you’ll be able to see 7 countries from its top! The wheel doesn’t stop for passengers-instead they just walk in to the large egg-shaped glass capsules while it is in motion. A full trip takes 30 minutes.

The millennium Dome is probably the most ambitious of all millennium projects. It’s the largest building of its kind in the world. It’s over 50 metres high and over 300 metres in diameter. It’s as high as Nelson’s Column, could swallow 2 Wembley Stadiums, 3300 double-decker buses and still have some spare room!

The Dome was designed by the architect Richard Rogers, who created the Pompidou Centre in Paris. There are 14 exhibition zones in the Dome, and each of them has something to amaze and educate everyone who visits it. In home Planet zone, for example, you’ll be able to go on a virtual trip through space.

The millenium Bridge is a thin blade of steel with wooden decking, connecting the Tate Gallery of Modern Art on Bankside with the steps of St Paul’s Cathedral. It’s the first pedestrian-only bridge to be built across the Thames for more than 100 years.
Because of the great size of the USA, local newspapers are more important than national ones. Only the New York Times, the Chicago Tribune and the Wall Street Journal are read over a large part of the country. But there are other newspapers that have a wide interest and influence; they include the Washington Post, the popular Daily News, The Baltimore Sun, The Philadelphia Inquirer, the St Louis Post Dispatch and the San Francisco Examiner. Most US newspapers are controlled by large monopolists.

The US press plays an important part in the business of government; the press conference is an American invention.

In the 20th century newspapers have ranged from tabloids featuring pictures and sensational news to, “responsible journals”. Their pages are varied and include columns devoted to news, letters to the editor, business and finance, sports, entertainment, art, music, books, comics, fashions, food, society, television and radio. As the great newspaper chains and news agencies grew, America’s press lost its individualistic character; many features are common to newspapers all over the country, which therefore have a uniform appearance.

Although there are no separate Sunday papers as there are in Great Britain, US daily papers do have special Sunday editions. Many of these are remarkable in size.

The New York Times has the largest circulation of any newspaper in the US, selling more than two million copies each day.

Aside from a few notable exceptions like the New York Times, the St Louis Post-Dispatch, the Washington Post, the press is daily filled with violence news. It is a river of morbidity, murder, divorce and gang fights. It’s a mélange of chintzy gossip columns, horoscopes, homemaking hints, advice to the lovelorn, comics, crossword puzzles and insane features like: “Are you happily married?” Take the following test.”

Almost every American newspaper carries comic strips, usually at least a page of them.

In contrast to daily newspapers, many magazines in the USA are national and even international. Those with the widest circulation are Time, Reader’s Digest, TV Guide, Woman’s Day, better Home and Gardens, Family Circle, the National Geographic Magazine and Ladies’ Home Journal.
Albert Einstein is known all over the world as a brilliant theoretical physicist and the founder of the theory of relativity. He is perhaps the greatest scientist of the 20th century. Some of his ideas made possible the atomic bomb, as well as television and other inventions. He was born in 1879 in a small German town.

The Einstein family soon moved to Munich, where Albert went to school. Neither his parents, nor his school teachers thought much of his mental abilities. His uncle often joked: “Not everybody is born to become a professor”. In 1895 Albert failed the entrance examination to a technical college in Zurich. A year later, however, he managed to pass the exam and entered the college. After graduating from the college, Einstein started to work at the Swiss Patent Office in Bern. In 1905 he wrote a short article in a science magazine. This was his “Special Theory of Relativity”, which gave the world the most famous equation relating mass and energy (E=mc²), the basis of atomic energy. Later, he became a professor in several European universities and in 1914 moved to Berlin as a member of the Prussian Academy of Sciences. After ten years of hard work he created his “General Theory Of Relativity”. In 1921 Einstein received the Nobel Prize for Physics. A Jew, and a pacifist, he was attacked by the Nazis and when Hitler came to power in 1933 he decided to settle in the United States. In 1939 Albert Einstein wrote a letter to President Roosevelt, at the request of several prominent physicists, outlining the military potential of nuclear energy and the dangers of a Nazi lead in this field. His letter greatly influenced the decision to build an atomic bomb, though he took no part in the Manhattan Project. After the war he spoke out passionately against nuclear weapons and repression. Einstein died in 1955. The artificial element einsteinium has been named in his honour.

Questions:

• Why is Einstein generally thought of as being the greatest scientist of the 20th century?
• What did his parents and relatives think of his mental abilities?
• Did he manage to pass his entrance exams at once?
• Where did Einstein work after graduating from the college?
• When did he create his “Special Theory of Relativity”?
• Why is it considered to be one of the greatest discoveries ever made?
• How long did it take him to form his “General Theory of Relativity”?
• What other outstanding physicists do you know?
There were only 30,000 words in old English. Modern English has the largest vocabulary in the world—more than 600,000 words in it.

There are about 60,000 words in common use. About 450-500 words are added to the English vocabulary every year, 70 percent of the English vocabulary are loan words and only 30 percent of the words are native.

There are words from 120 languages in English, including Russian. The most frequently used words in written English are: the, of, and, to, a, in, that, is, I, it, for and as. The most frequently used word in conversation is I.

The commonest letter is “e”. More words begin with the letter “s” than any other. The most overworked word in English is the word set. It has 126 verbal uses and 58 noun uses.

The newest letters added to the English alphabet are “j” and “v” which are of post Shakespearean use.

The largest English-language dictionary is the 20 volume Oxford English Dictionary, with 21,728 pages.

The commonest English name is Smith. There are about 80,000 people called Smith in England and Wales, and about 1,700,000 in the USA.
Are there any practical rules for healthy living? Very few. The formula for healthy life cannot be put into words - it can only be practised. Some people break the so called “health rule” every day and escape punishment and some look after their health and don’t live any longer in the end.

There are hardly any rules worth having, but there are some principles which will help to counteract the harmful genes.

These principles are: Love in childhood. Love from parents.

Another principle is-healthy nutrition with all elements in proper proportion.

Then comes control of environment-air, water and especially the new pollutives. Remember, too, the animals-they have a right to share in the health we want for ourselves.

Stresses are an essential part of being alive – but the art of life is to arrange that stress does not become strain. A healthy organism is extremely tough. It can with-stand overwork, fatigue, anxiety, microbes up to a certain point, of course.

A personal belief-the most important element in a healthy life is some belief in life.

Perhaps these health principles seem too theoretical, but they are golden rules which can stretch our powers and help us in our fight against harmful genes.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>№</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Past Simple</th>
<th>Past Participle</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>be ['bi:]</td>
<td>was, were</td>
<td>been [bi:n]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>beat [bi:t]</td>
<td>beat [bi:t]</td>
<td>beaten ['bi:tn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>become [bi 'kəm]</td>
<td>became [bi 'kəm]</td>
<td>become [bi 'kəm]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>begin [bi 'gən]</td>
<td>began [bi 'gən]</td>
<td>begun [bi 'gən]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>bend [bend]</td>
<td>bent [bent]</td>
<td>bent [bent]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>bite [bit]</td>
<td>bit ['bit]</td>
<td>bitten ['bitn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>blow [blou]</td>
<td>blew [blu:]</td>
<td>blown [bloun]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>break [breik]</td>
<td>broke [brouk]</td>
<td>broken ['brouk(ə)n]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>bring [brɪŋ]</td>
<td>brought [brɔ:t]</td>
<td>brought [brɔ:t]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>build [bild]</td>
<td>built [bilt]</td>
<td>built [bilt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>choose [tʃuːz]</td>
<td>chose [tʃəʊz]</td>
<td>chosen [tʃəʊz(ə)n]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>come [kʌm]</td>
<td>came [keim]</td>
<td>come [kʌm]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>cost [kəst]</td>
<td>cost [kəst]</td>
<td>cost [kəst]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>deal (with) [di:l]</td>
<td>dealt [delt]</td>
<td>dealt [delt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>dig [dɪg]</td>
<td>dug [dʒʌɡ]</td>
<td>dug [dʒʌɡ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>do [du:]</td>
<td>did [dɪd]</td>
<td>done [dʌn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>draw [drɔ:]</td>
<td>drew [draː]</td>
<td>drawn [dra:n]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>drink [drɪŋk]</td>
<td>drank [draŋk]</td>
<td>drunk [draŋk]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>drive [draɪv]</td>
<td>drove [draʊv]</td>
<td>driven ['draɪvn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>eat [iːt]</td>
<td>ate [ɛt, et]</td>
<td>eaten ['iːtn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Word</td>
<td>Past Tense</td>
<td>Past Participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>fall</td>
<td>fell</td>
<td>fallen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>feel</td>
<td>felt</td>
<td>felt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>fight</td>
<td>fought</td>
<td>fought</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>find</td>
<td>found</td>
<td>found</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>fly</td>
<td>flew</td>
<td>flown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>forget</td>
<td>forgot</td>
<td>forgotten</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>forgive</td>
<td>forgave</td>
<td>forgiven</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>freeze</td>
<td>froze</td>
<td>frozen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>get</td>
<td>got</td>
<td>got</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>give</td>
<td>gave</td>
<td>given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>went</td>
<td>gone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>grow</td>
<td>grew</td>
<td>grown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>hang</td>
<td>hung</td>
<td>hung</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>have</td>
<td>had</td>
<td>had</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>hear</td>
<td>heard</td>
<td>heard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>hide</td>
<td>hid</td>
<td>hidden</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
<td>hit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>hold</td>
<td>held</td>
<td>held</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
<td>hurt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>keep</td>
<td>kept</td>
<td>kept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>know</td>
<td>knew</td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>lay</td>
<td>laid</td>
<td>laid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>lead</td>
<td>led</td>
<td>led</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Word 1</td>
<td>Word 2</td>
<td>Word 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>leave [li:v]</td>
<td>left [left]</td>
<td>left [left]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>let [let]</td>
<td>let [let]</td>
<td>let [let]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>lie [laɪ]</td>
<td>lay [leɪ]</td>
<td>lain [leɪn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>light [laɪt]</td>
<td>lit [lit]</td>
<td>lit [lit]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>lose [luːz]</td>
<td>lost [lɒst]</td>
<td>lost [lɒst]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>make [meɪk]</td>
<td>made [meɪd]</td>
<td>made [meɪd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>mean [miːn]</td>
<td>meant [ment]</td>
<td>meant [ment]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>meet [miːt]</td>
<td>met [met]</td>
<td>met [met]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>pay [peɪ]</td>
<td>paid [peɪd]</td>
<td>paid [peɪd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>put [pʊt]</td>
<td>put [pʊt]</td>
<td>put [pʊt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>read [rɪd]</td>
<td>read [red]</td>
<td>read [red]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>ride [raɪd]</td>
<td>rode [roʊd]</td>
<td>ridden ['rɪdən]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>ring [rɪŋ]</td>
<td>rang [ræŋ]</td>
<td>rung [ræŋ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>rise [raɪz]</td>
<td>rose [rouz]</td>
<td>risen ['rɪzən]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>run [rʌn]</td>
<td>ran [ræn]</td>
<td>run [rʌn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>say [seɪ]</td>
<td>said [sed]</td>
<td>said [sed]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>see [siː]</td>
<td>saw [sɔː]</td>
<td>seen [siːn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>sell [sel]</td>
<td>sold [sould]</td>
<td>sold [sould]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>send [send]</td>
<td>sent [sent]</td>
<td>sent [sent]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>seek [siːk]</td>
<td>sought [sɔːt]</td>
<td>sought [sɔːt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>shake [ʃeɪk]</td>
<td>shook [ʃʊk]</td>
<td>shaken ['ʃeɪkən]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>shine [ʃaɪn]</td>
<td>shone [ʃaʊn]</td>
<td>shone [ʃaʊn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>69</td>
<td>shoot [ʃuːt]</td>
<td>shot [ʃɒt]</td>
<td>shot [ʃɒt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Present Tense</td>
<td>Past Tense</td>
<td>Past Participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>show [ʃau]</td>
<td>showed [ʃaʊd]</td>
<td>showed shown [ʃaʊn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>sing [sɪŋ]</td>
<td>sang [sæŋ]</td>
<td>sung [sʌŋ]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td>sink [sɪŋk]</td>
<td>sank [sæŋk]</td>
<td>sunk [sʌŋk]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>sit [sɪt]</td>
<td>sat [sæt]</td>
<td>sat [sæt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>sleep [sliːp]</td>
<td>slept [sliːpt]</td>
<td>slept [sliːpt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>speak [spiːk]</td>
<td>spoke [spouk]</td>
<td>spoken ['spoukan]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>spend [spend]</td>
<td>spent [spent]</td>
<td>spent [spent]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>77</td>
<td>stand [stænd]</td>
<td>stood [stʊd]</td>
<td>stood [stʊd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>steal [stiːl]</td>
<td>stole [stoul]</td>
<td>stolen ['stoulən]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>stick [stɪk]</td>
<td>stuck [stʌk]</td>
<td>stuck [stʌk]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>strike [straik]</td>
<td>struck [strʌk]</td>
<td>struck, stricken [strʌk]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>swear [swɛə]</td>
<td>swore [swɔː]</td>
<td>sworn [swɔːn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>sweep [swiːp]</td>
<td>swept [swɛpt]</td>
<td>swept [swɛpt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>swim [swɪm]</td>
<td>swam [swæm]</td>
<td>swum [swʌm]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>take [teɪk]</td>
<td>took [tʊk]</td>
<td>taken ['teɪkn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>teach [tiːtʃ]</td>
<td>taught [tɔːt]</td>
<td>taught [tɔːt]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>tear [teə]</td>
<td>tore [tɔː]</td>
<td>torn [tɔːn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>tell [tel]</td>
<td>told [tɔʊld]</td>
<td>told [tɔʊld]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>think [θɪŋk]</td>
<td>thought [θ成功举办</td>
<td>成功举办</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>throw [θroʊ]</td>
<td>threw [θruː]</td>
<td>thrown [θroʊn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>understand [ʌndərˈstænd]</td>
<td>understood [ʌndərˈstʊd]</td>
<td>understood [ʌndərˈstʊd]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td>wake [weɪk]</td>
<td>woke [wouk]</td>
<td>woken ['woukan]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>wear [weə]</td>
<td>wore [wɔː]</td>
<td>worn [wɔːn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93</td>
<td>win [win]</td>
<td>won [wʌn]</td>
<td>won [wʌn]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>write [rɪt]</td>
<td>wrote [rout]</td>
<td>written ['rɪtn]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Simple</th>
<th>Derivative</th>
<th>Compound</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mother</td>
<td>journalist</td>
<td>shop-assistant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>school</td>
<td>actor</td>
<td>motherland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book</td>
<td>artist</td>
<td>mother tongue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>land</td>
<td>speaker</td>
<td>airbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shop</td>
<td>writer</td>
<td>countryside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>country</td>
<td>worker</td>
<td>babysitter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>air</td>
<td>gardener</td>
<td>airline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work</td>
<td>reader</td>
<td>stepmother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>journal</td>
<td>development</td>
<td>teacher-trainer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>garden</td>
<td>government</td>
<td>editor-in-chief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>friend</td>
<td>dictation</td>
<td>mother-in-law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>king</td>
<td>friendship</td>
<td>father-in-law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>art</td>
<td>leadership</td>
<td>chairman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baby</td>
<td>kingdom</td>
<td>policeman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>news</td>
<td>ruler</td>
<td>businessman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bus</td>
<td>lawyer</td>
<td>sportsman</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Noun / Verb

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Noun</th>
<th>Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>help</td>
<td>to help</td>
<td>rest</td>
<td>to rest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>answer</td>
<td>to answer</td>
<td>talk</td>
<td>to talk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>to watch</td>
<td>mind</td>
<td>to mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trick</td>
<td>to trick</td>
<td>influence</td>
<td>to influence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>value</td>
<td>to value</td>
<td>object</td>
<td>to object</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>risk</td>
<td>to risk</td>
<td>advice</td>
<td>to advise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paint</td>
<td>to paint</td>
<td>respect</td>
<td>to respect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colour</td>
<td>to colour</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debate</td>
<td>to debate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plan</td>
<td>to plan</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suffixes</td>
<td>Samples</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-(i) ty</td>
<td>reality, activity, cruelty</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-age</td>
<td>package, carriage, marriage</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-al</td>
<td>proposal, approval, disposal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-an/-ian</td>
<td>American, musician, politician</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ance/ence</td>
<td>attendance, importance, difference, reference</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ancy/ency</td>
<td>sufficiency, vacancy, efficiency, agency</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ant/-ent</td>
<td>student, servant, applicant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ary/-ery</td>
<td>dictionary, slavery</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ive</td>
<td>relative, representative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-dom</td>
<td>kingdom, freedom, wisdom</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ee</td>
<td>referee, refugee, employee</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-er</td>
<td>teacher, reader, leader, speaker</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-or/-ar</td>
<td>beggar, compositor, creator, conductor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ese</td>
<td>Japanese, Chinese</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ess</td>
<td>lioness, waitress, actress</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-hood</td>
<td>childhood, neighbourhood, brotherhood</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ics</td>
<td>phonetics, linguistics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>meeting, building, drawing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ion/-tion</td>
<td>dictation, decoration, revision</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ism</td>
<td>journalism, heroism, realism</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ist</td>
<td>journalist, realist, novelist, artist</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ment</td>
<td>improvement, development, movement</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ness</td>
<td>happiness, darkness</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ship</td>
<td>friendship, leadership, championship</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-th</td>
<td>strength, length, width, depth</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ure</td>
<td>pleasure, signature</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y</td>
<td>difficulty</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prefixes /Suffixes</td>
<td>Samples</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anti-</td>
<td>anti-war</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dis-</td>
<td>disgraceful, dishonest</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>il-</td>
<td>illegal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>im-</td>
<td>impolite, impossible</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-</td>
<td>indefinite, independent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inter-</td>
<td>international</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ir-</td>
<td>irregular, irritable</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mis-</td>
<td>mistrustful</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multi-</td>
<td>multinational</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non</td>
<td>non-fiction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>post-</td>
<td>post war</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pre-</td>
<td>pre war</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>un-</td>
<td>unkind, unpleasant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-able/-ible</td>
<td>comfortable, eatable, digestible</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-al/(-ial)</td>
<td>formal, financial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-an/-ian</td>
<td>American, Russian</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ant/-ent</td>
<td>dependent, important</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ed</td>
<td>educated, tired</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ese</td>
<td>Japanese, Chinese</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ful</td>
<td>beautiful, wonderful, colourful, thankful</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ic</td>
<td>poetic, historic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ical</td>
<td>historical, ethical, musical</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ing</td>
<td>interesting, charming</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ish</td>
<td>reddish, childish</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ite</td>
<td>favourite</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ive/-ative</td>
<td>talkative, active, attentive, attractive, impressive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-less</td>
<td>useless, helpless, windless</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ly</td>
<td>lovely, lively, friendly, lonely</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ous</td>
<td>prosperous, courageous</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-y</td>
<td>cloudy, sunny, rainy, healthy</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Substantivised Adjectives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>Nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>poor</td>
<td>the poor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rich</td>
<td>the rich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>old</td>
<td>the old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>young</td>
<td>the young</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homeless</td>
<td>the homeless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deaf</td>
<td>the deaf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blind</td>
<td>the blind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>injured</td>
<td>the injured</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disabled</td>
<td>the disabled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unemployed</td>
<td>the unemployed</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These expressions are always plural in meaning.

**Sample:**
- Jack is a rich man.
- The rich have no money problems.
- I have a Chinese friend.
- The Chinese have an interesting history.

### Compound Nouns

**Compound nouns** are formed by joining two or more words. Some short common compound nouns are written as one word: *bedroom, postman.*

A few are written with a hyphen: *t-shirt, make-up.*

But most are written as two words: *bus stop, mother tongue,* etc.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun+noun</th>
<th>Adjective+noun</th>
<th>Noun+Preposition+noun</th>
<th>Noun+verb</th>
<th>Verb+noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>toothpaste</td>
<td>whiteboard</td>
<td>mother-in-law</td>
<td>haircut</td>
<td>swimming-pool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>headline</td>
<td>blackboard</td>
<td>father-in-law</td>
<td>sunshine</td>
<td>washing machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>newspaper</td>
<td>half moon</td>
<td>sister-in-law</td>
<td>sunset</td>
<td>machine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bedroom</td>
<td>full moon</td>
<td>editor-in-chief</td>
<td>sunrise</td>
<td>living room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homework</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>newsstand</td>
<td>room</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>network</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>busstop</td>
<td>writing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>film star</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hairstyle</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moonlight</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teachertrainer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>babysitter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toothbrush</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toothache</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sunglasses</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swimming-pool</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>washing machine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>machine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>living room</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>room</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>writing paper</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Many/much/a lot of/plenty of

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>many (large quantities)</th>
<th>too many+ countable plural nouns (more than you need)</th>
<th>much (large quantities)</th>
<th>too much+ uncountables (more than you need)</th>
<th>a lot of/lots of (a large quantity)</th>
<th>plenty of (large quantities)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to say “more than is good”</td>
<td>to say “more than is good”</td>
<td>as much as we need or more</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>few+ countable nouns</th>
<th>a few+ countable plurals (small quantities) (some, but not a lot)</th>
<th>little+ uncountable nouns</th>
<th>a little + uncountable (small quantities) some, but not a lot)</th>
<th>a lot of+ countable/uncountable nouns</th>
<th>much+ uncountable nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- She has few close friends.
- I’ve got a few friends.
- There was little cheese in the fridge.
- We’ve made a little progress.
- I’ve got a lot of books. I’ve got a lot of time.

### too+adjective/adverb (more than you need or want) | enough+noun | Adjective / Adverb +enough | very+ adjective/adverb | quite+ adjective |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>too fast</td>
<td>enough time</td>
<td>good enough</td>
<td>very nice</td>
<td>quite analytical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>too hot</td>
<td>enough money</td>
<td>well enough</td>
<td>very large</td>
<td>quite right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>too difficult</td>
<td>enough energy</td>
<td>warm enough</td>
<td>very fast</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Writing a poem is too difficult for me.
- I can’t catch what you are saying, you are speaking too fast.
- There aren’t enough recycling bins.
- The man’s got enough money to buy a car.
- Your pronunciation is good enough.
- The sitting room is warm enough.
- I can learn it very quickly.
- You’re quite right.
- I’m quite good at playing the piano.
### The Definite Article

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The with a singular countable noun or an adjective to talk about things in general</th>
<th>Without the in 1880 in 1960 in 2006</th>
<th>The with the most place names</th>
<th>The</th>
<th>Without the</th>
<th>Proper Names without the</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• The</td>
<td>• The</td>
<td>• The</td>
<td>• The World Health Organization</td>
<td>Hirosima Nagasaki</td>
<td>McDonald’s</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **The** automobile has done worse since the economic crises.
- **Without** in the late 1880s in the 1960s in the beginning in the 20th century
- **The** World Health Organization
- **Without** in the UK in the USA in the Japanese city of Hirosima

### The Definite Article with geographical names

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The</th>
<th>The</th>
<th>Without</th>
<th>The</th>
<th>Without</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Great Barrier Reef</td>
<td>Indian Atlantic Pacific</td>
<td>Europe Australia Canberra China New Zealand</td>
<td>Himalayas Caucasus Urals Canary Islands</td>
<td>Mount Everest or Everest Mount Savalan Lake Garda Bondi Beach</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **We use “the” with the names of seas, oceans, rivers, lakes and deserts.**
  - The Pacific Ocean, the Black Sea, the Baykal, the Araz, the Sahara.
- **We don’t use “the” with the names of the continents, countries or cities.**
  - But the Vatican.
- **We use “the” with the names of groups of islands, hills or mountain chains.**
- **We don’t use “the” with the names of lakes, beaches, or single hills and mountain peaks.**
  - **Note:** We should use either the word “lake” or “the”. (Lake Baykal or The Baykal.)

### Country/City

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The</th>
<th>The</th>
<th>Without</th>
<th>The</th>
<th>Without</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• England/London</td>
<td>The English The Azerbaijani</td>
<td>The English The Azerbaijani</td>
<td>• The English language</td>
<td>• The Azerbaijani language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Azerbaijan/Baku</td>
<td>The English The Azerbaijani</td>
<td>The English The Azerbaijani</td>
<td>• The English language</td>
<td>• The Azerbaijani language</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- London is the capital of England.
- • The English speak English.
- • The English is a worldwide language.
- • We learn the English language at school.
**Present Participle**

Participle I or Present Participle is the Non-Finite Form of the Verb. It is formed by adding -ing to the Verb.

**Sample:** to write-writing, to speak-speaking, to read-reading, to do-doing, to create-creating, to go-going focus - focusing to donate - donating, etc.

1. We can use Participle I to give more information about a noun. They can be described as shortened relative clauses (defining or non-defining).

**Sample:**

There’s a girl reading a book. (who is reading a book).

2. Clauses with a present participle replace an active verb. The verb they replace can be in any tense.

**Sample:** She lived in a flat belonging to her mother.

(which belonged to her mother)

**Note:** A) Present Participle phrase replacing a main clause: When two actions by the same subject occur simultaneously it is usually possible to express one of them by Present Participle. The Present Participle can be before or after the finite verb. **Sample:** She entered the room. She was singing a song. She entered the room singing a song.

B) When one action is immediately followed by another by the same subject the first action can often be expressed by Present Participle. The Present Participle should be placed first. **Sample:**

- The man opened the envelope and took out the letter.
- Opening the envelope the man took out the letter.

1. The basic verbs of sensation see, hear, feel, smell, notice and watch can be followed by object + Present Participle. **Sample:**

- I saw the boy playing in the yard.  
  Don’t you hear the door knocking?

The action in the Present Participle may be either complete or incomplete.

2. see, hear, feel, notice and watch can also be followed by object + Bare Infinitive. (without “to”)

**Sample:** I saw him leave the room.

- The infinitive implies that the action is complete.

3. Comparison of the two forms.

Participle I is more generally useful as it can express both complete and incomplete actions. But the Infinitive is useful when we want to emphasize that the action is complete. It’s also neater than the Participle I when there is a succession of actions. **Sample:**

- I noticed her enter the room, put her bag on the table and sit on the sofa.
- I saw him enter the office, take out the document and photograph it.

4. **Note:** In the Passive the full Infinitive is used after verbs of the senses. **Sample:** She was heard to say that the guests had been invited.
The Past Participle/Participle II

**Formation:** The Past Participle of regular verbs is formed by adding -ed or -d to the infinitives. *Example:* work-worked, love-loved.

It’s used:

1. **As an adjective:**
   - Stolen money
   - Broken glass
   - Blocked roads
   - Built house
   - Sent letter
   - Painted walls

2. The Past Participle can replace a subject+passive verb just as the Present Participle can replace subject+active verb. *Example:*
   - She enters. She is accompanied by her mother=She enters, accompanied by her mother.

**THE COMPLEX OBJECT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
<th>Pronouns</th>
<th>Note:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>see</td>
<td>me</td>
<td>doing smth/ do smth</td>
<td>The basic verbs of sensation: see, hear, feel, smell, notice, watch can be followed by object+Present Participle or Bare Infinitive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hear</td>
<td>you</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>watch</td>
<td>him</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feel</td>
<td>her</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>notice</td>
<td>it</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>us</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>them</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**(or a noun)**

Sample:
- Mother didn’t *hear* me *come in/coming in.*
- We *watched* the boys *run* across the garden, *open* a window and *enter* the house.
The Gerund

Gerund is the -ing form of a verb used as a noun. Gerund is used in the same ways as a noun, i.e. as a subject or an object. Gerund can be “the subject” of a sentence when an action is being considered in a general sense. Gerund can be “the object” of a sentence. Gerund can be used as a complement of a verb.

Sample: 1. Playing tennis is fun.
(Playing is gerund and it’s used as the subject of a sentence).
2. He enjoys playing tennis.
(Playing is gerund, it is used as the object of the verb “enjoy”).
3. Jane is interested in playing tennis.
(Playing is a gerund).
4. Her hobby is playing tennis.
(Playing is gerund as the complement of the verb).

We use the Gerund:
1) After some verbs:
hate, start, finish, begin, stop, continue, enjoy, mind, etc.
2) After the prepositions
3) After the possessives (Follow the tables given below).

The Gerund is used after:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Possessive pronoun+ing</th>
<th>Nouns in the possessive case+ing</th>
<th>Prep+ing</th>
<th>Verbs+ing</th>
<th>Verb+ prepositions+ing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>my</td>
<td>Ann’s</td>
<td>after</td>
<td>enjoy</td>
<td>aim at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>your</td>
<td>Jane’s</td>
<td>in</td>
<td>like</td>
<td>apologize for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>his</td>
<td>Ted’s</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>mind</td>
<td>care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>her</td>
<td></td>
<td>before</td>
<td>hate</td>
<td>believe in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>our</td>
<td></td>
<td>at</td>
<td>need</td>
<td>complain of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>their</td>
<td></td>
<td>for</td>
<td>suggest</td>
<td>concentrate on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ann’s</td>
<td>Jane’s</td>
<td></td>
<td>remember</td>
<td>depend on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jane’s</td>
<td>Ted’s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ban from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>talk about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>think about/about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>succeed in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>worry about</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- His coming to the party surprised all of us.
- Jane’s solving the problem shows that she is a genius.
- After leaving school most students enter Universities.
- I like taking exams.
- She enjoys singing a song.
- She’s aiming at becoming a millionaire.
- The student apologised for being late.
- Sister always complains of having little time.
### be+adjective +prep+ing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to be accustomed to</th>
<th>to be jealous of</th>
<th>to be angry with</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>to be similar to</td>
<td>to be tired of</td>
<td>to be pleased with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be afraid of</td>
<td>to be angry at</td>
<td>to be concerned about</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be ashamed of</td>
<td>to be clever at</td>
<td>to be terrified of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be aware of</td>
<td>to be good at</td>
<td>to be proud of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be capable of</td>
<td>to be bad at</td>
<td>to be famous for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be fond of</td>
<td>to be guilty of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *My granny is clever at guessing people’s ages.*
- *I’m tired of doing the same things.*
- *My brother is good at learning Maths.*

### Verb + object + prep + ing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>accuse smb of</th>
<th>forgive smb for (doing smth)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>apologize to smb for</td>
<td>involve smb in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrest smb for</td>
<td>thank smb for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blame smb for</td>
<td>warn smb about/against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charge smb with</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *My friend thanked me for lending him some money.*
- *He was accused of being late.*
- *The students were congratulated on passing the exams.*
- *The police warned the people against going there.*

- They talked about buying/selling a new car/house.
- Henry thinks of going to (visiting) America in July.
- What do you plan doing this weekend?
- We’re looking forward to going back to school.
- Please excuse me for disturbing you!
- Their father didn’t forgive the sons for telling him a lie.
- Mother involved her daughter in improving her English.
- The boy apologized to the people for keeping them waiting.
- The teacher accused the boy of breaking the window.
- Jane is never tired of playing computer games.
- Tony is excellent at keeping in touch with his relatives.
- My brother is responsible for designing new cars.
- He is always interested in working with new technology.
### If+Past Simple-Zero Conditional

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If+Present Simple-Zero Conditional</th>
<th>Present Simple</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conditional Clauses consist of two parts: the If-Clause (hypothesis) and the main Clause (result). When the If Clause comes before the main clause the two sentences are separated by a comma. We don’t use a comma when the If Clause follows the main clause. We use Zero Conditional to talk about cause and effect when statement is generally true.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“If” is used for things that can happen “When” for definite things that always or normally happen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“If we don’t sleep enough, When spring comes, If the clouds become too heavy, When winter comes, If you hit ice,” we get a headache. it gets warmer. it rains. birds fly to hot countries. it melts.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| \[ \begin{array}{l}
If+Present Simple \\
shall/will
\end{array} \]

### Conditional I

When we talk about ... situations now or in the future we use Conditional 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>We use the Simple Present in the If-Clause (even though the meaning is present or future)</th>
<th>Shall/will+Infinitive in the main clause. Or Imperative or Modals.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• If the level of the sea rises, many islands will disappear.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• If you have a headache, take an Aspirin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• If you have a headache, you can take an Aspirin.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Conditional II

When we talk about “unreal” and “imaginary” or “improbable”, “unlikely” situations now or in the future we use Conditional 2. (Imaginary Situation in the Present or the future, also used to give advice).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>If+Past Simple</th>
<th>would</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>We use the Simple Past in the If-Clause (even though the meaning is present or future)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would+bare Infinitive in the main clause.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• If I had a lot of time, I would travel.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• If I visited London, I would see Big Ben</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• If she had a computer, she would send us an email. (But she doesn’t have one, so she won’t send the email. -imaginary situation in the present.)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• If I went to Los Angeles, I would visit the world famous Film Studios.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In a more formal style we can use “were” instead of “was” after “If”.

| • If I were there, I would see many old places of interest. |
| • If I were you, I would study harder. |

In unreal conditional sentences we can use “could” to mean would be able to.

| • If I had wings, I could fly. |
| • If trees had legs, they would run away. |
### Modals

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>100% (It’s a rule)</th>
<th>80% (It’s not recommended)</th>
<th>0% (It’s not necessary, but you can if you want)</th>
<th>0% (It’s not necessary, but you can if you want)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mustn’t</td>
<td>shouldn’t</td>
<td>needn’t</td>
<td>don’t have to have to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• You mustn’t smoke on the plane.</td>
<td>• We shouldn’t go to bed so late</td>
<td>• You needn’t force anybody to behave so.</td>
<td>• It’s Sunday tomorrow. I don’t have to get up early.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Expressions with:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>to do</th>
<th>to make</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• to do (morning) exercises</td>
<td>• to make a mistake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to do the cooking (the cleaning, the shopping, the ironing, the reading, etc.)</td>
<td>• to make dinner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to do one’s teeth (hair)</td>
<td>• to make money</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to do homework</td>
<td>• to make a decision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to do house work</td>
<td>• to make a noise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to do subject (geography, P.T., etc,)</td>
<td>• to make progress</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to do one’s best</td>
<td>• to make a fire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to do well</td>
<td>• to make a bed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to do a translation</td>
<td>• to make a fortune</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to do the sights of a city (a museum, a city)</td>
<td>• to make a choice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to do smb a favour</td>
<td>• to make an effort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to do smb good (harm, wrong)</td>
<td>• to make friends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to do with something</td>
<td>• to make enemies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to do an exam</td>
<td>• to make a law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• to do a test</td>
<td>• to make a list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• to make a note</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
An idiom - is a group of words with a meaning that is different from the individual words. Sometimes the meaning is easy to understand, sometimes it’s difficult to understand from the individual words.

**Sample:**

1. My brother really gets on my nerves.
   (he is very annoying, makes me angry)
2. She asked me to keep an eye on (watch or look after) the house while she is away.
3. The answer is on the tip of my tongue.
   (I know it, but can’t remember it at this moment.)

Some common idioms are used in everyday questions and replies.

1. **A:** Are you coming?
   **B:** Yes, hang on. (wait a minute)

2. **A:** What’s up? (What’s the matter!)
   **B:** Nothing.

3. **A:** I’ve forgotten to bring your book.
   **B:** Never mind! (It’s Ok, no problem)

4. **A:** Would you prefer to stay in?
   **B:** It’s up to you! (It’s your decision).

5. **A:** I don’t know which one to choose.
   **B:** Well, make up your mind. (make a decision)

6. **A:** Can I borrow your pen?
   **B:** Sure, go ahead! (help yourself, take it, do it)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Situation</th>
<th>Phrases</th>
<th>Possible replies</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Greetings</td>
<td>How do you do?</td>
<td>How do you do?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hello!</td>
<td>Hello!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hallo!</td>
<td>Hallo!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hi!</td>
<td>Hi!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Good morning!</td>
<td>Good morning!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Good afternoon!</td>
<td>Good afternoon!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Good evening!</td>
<td>Good evening!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>This is Mr. Smith</td>
<td>Glad to meet you!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>May I introduce myself?</td>
<td>Pleased to meet you!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Will you introduce me to...?</td>
<td>How do you do, Mr. Smith?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I’m glad to see you!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Of course!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting People</td>
<td>How are you?</td>
<td>Fine, thank you!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You look wonderful today!</td>
<td>I’m all right, thank you!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>You don’t look your best today!</td>
<td>Very well, thank you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I must say the same of you!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parting</td>
<td>Good Bye!</td>
<td>Good Bye!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>So long!</td>
<td>I hope to see you again!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See you later!</td>
<td>See you soon!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>See you on Monday!</td>
<td>Thank you for your visit!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>My best regards to your family!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attracting someone’s</td>
<td>Excuse me ... !</td>
<td>Yes, what can I do for you?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>attention</td>
<td>Look here!</td>
<td>Yes, what is it?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I say!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Starting a Talk</td>
<td>By the way, ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fortunately, ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unfortunately, ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Frankly speaking ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It seems to me that ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To my mind ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In my opinion ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>On the one hand ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>On the other hand ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>After all ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Well, the point is ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>It’s like this.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I think that ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discussing things</td>
<td>What do we do next?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I’m looking forward to...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I’d rather ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I’d like ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I’ve changed my mind.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I can’t make up my mind.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>I no longer want to ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. No friend’s a friend till he shall prove a friend.
2. The most I can do for my friend is simply to be his friend.
3. He will never have true friends who is afraid of making enemies.
4. Instead of loving your enemies, treat your friends a little better.
5. He has no friend who has many friends.
6. Friends are like melons. Shall I tell you why? To find one good, you must a hundred try.
7. A friend to all is a friend to none.
8. Love is blind; friendship closes its eyes.
9. Friendship is the sweetest form of love.
10. True friendship is a plant of slow growth.
11. Tell me what company you keep, and I’ll tell you who you are.
12. A friend is a second self; another I.
13. What is a friend? A single soul dwelling in two bodies.
14. It’s no use crying over spilt milk.
15. Look before you leap.
16. He who hesitates is lost.
17. Still waters run deep.
18. Don’t count your chickens before they’re hatched.
19. Don’t cross your bridges before you come to them.
20. First come first served.
21. Absence makes the heart grow fonder.
22. Out of sight, out of mind.
23. Make hay while the sun shines.
25. Where there’s a will there’s a way.
26. There’s no smoke without fire.
27. Better late than never.
28. Don’t put the cart before the horse.
29. All that glitters is not gold.
30. You can’t have your cake and eat it.
31. Experience is the best teacher.
32. Better safe than sorry.
33. When in Rome, do as the Romans do.
34. A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.
35. No news is good news.
36. Live and let live.
37. Live and learn.
38. The more you have, the more you want.
39. Let sleeping dogs lie.
40. A hero dies, his fame remains.
41. There is no rose without a thorn.
42. Pearls are ill valued by hungry swine.
43. Still waters run deep.
44. Lost time is never found again.
45. Bad news travels fast.
46. Eat at pleasure, drink with measure!
47. Combine a visit with business.
48. Cut your coat according to your cloth.
49. Every dog is a lion at home!
50. Eyes are the mirror of the soul!
51. God helps those who help themselves.
52. Walls have ears.
53. What is done cannot be undone!
54. What is lost is lost!
abandon [əˈbændən] (v) leave, leave behind, put away, give over, stop, cease, quit, give up completely.

adapted [əˈdeptd] (adj) combined, modified, smth made suitable for a new situation.

adopt [əˈdɔpt] (v) accept, receive, start using a particular method or show a particular attitude towards sth/sb

affiliated [əˈfilɪtɪd] (adj) associated, related, integrated

affordable [əˈfɔ:drəbl] (adj) permissible, admissible, affordable, acceptable, inexpensive, reasonably priced.

aircraft [ˈɛəkrɑːft] (n) airplane, jet, helicopter, or other machine capable of flight.

alter [ˈɔːltə] (v) change, vary, transform, make different.

ambassador [æmˈbæsədə] (n) messenger, representative, a diplomat sent by a country as its official representative to a foreign country.

analytical [ænəˈlɪtɪkl] (adj) systematic, logical, using a logical method of thinking about sth in order to understand it, especially by looking at all the parts separately, relating to or using analysis and logical reasoning.

angelic [ænˈdʒelɪk] (adj) divine, holy, innocent, relating to angels (innocent)

arouse [əˈraʊz] (v) call, produce, evoke or awaken someone from sleep, wake up.

assume [əˈsuːm] (v) 1. guess, suppose, think, fancy, without proof. 2. accept, manage.

attach [əˈtætʃ] (v) fasten or join one thing to another; syn: add, connect

attempt [əˈtæmpt] (n) effort, an act of trying to achieve something, typically one that is unsuccessful or not certain to succeed.

axe [æks] (n) a tool to chop, a tool with a wooden handle and a heavy metal blade used for chopping wood.

ban [bæn] 1. (n) an official or legal prohibition. 2. (v) prohibit, disallow, officially or legally prohibit/forbid sth.

bang [bæŋ] 1. (v) hit, beat, knock, bump, or put down smth forcefully and noisily, typically in anger or in order to attract attention. 2. (n) a sudden loud noise, bump.

barrier [ˈbærɪər] (n) obstacle, dam, wall, like a fence that prevents people from moving forward.

betray [biˈtreɪ] (v) 1. cheat, fool, expose a person/one’s country/group, danger by treacherously giving information to an enemy. 2. hurt smb who trusts you.

broadcast [ˈbrɔːkast] 1. (n) show, production, telecast, a radio or television programme or transmission. 2. (v) show, televise, telecast, transmit a program or some information by radio or television.

broaden [ˈbrɔːdn] (v) widen, expand, enlarge

bump (into) [ˈbʌmpaʊnt] (v) hit, crash into, knock against, run into

brain tumor [ˈbreɪn tjuːmə] a swelling on a part of the body (brain), generally without inflammation
Cable ['keɪbl] (n) wire, power line, transmission line, typically used for construction.
Calculate ['kælkjuleit] (v) 1. mean, aim, design. 2. suppose, believe. 3. estimate, count, determine the amount.
Contain [kənˈtem] (v) keep, capture, carry, have or hold (someone or something) within.
Chop off [tʃɔpɔf] (v) cut smth into pieces, cut off, remove sth by cutting it with a sharp tool.
Chuck [ˈʃʌkl] (n) giggle, snicker, titter.
Circumstance ['sərəʊkʌmstəns] (n) 1. case, moment, state, situation. 2. a fact or condition connected with or relevant to an event or action.
Commercial [ˈkɒmərəs] (adj) trade, trading, business, private enterprise, sales concerned with or engaged in commerce.
Condensed [kənˈdɛnst] (adj) impacted, pressed, thickened, compressed or concentrated.
Confirm [kənˈfɜrm] (v) approve, affirm, certify, ratify.
Conduct [kənˈdʌkt] (v) set up, found, institute, issue, publish, establish by law.
Contribute [kənˈtrɪbju:t] (v) help, aid, grant, support, donate.
Converse [kənˈvɜːs] (v) talk, speak, chat, have a conversation with sb.
Cookies [ˈkʊkɪz] (n) a packet of data sent by an internet server to a browser.
Crease [kriːs] 1. (v) wrinkle, get wrinkled. 2. (n) wrinkle, a line or ridge produced on paper or cloth by folding, pressing, or crushing it.
Credible [ˈkredəbl] (adj) trustworthy, reliable, faithful, probable, possible, believable, convincing.
Criticize ['krɪtɪsaɪz] (v) judge, attack, charge, find fault with, take aggressive action against sb/sth.
Cross-cultural ['krɒskəltʃərəl] (adj) multicultural, involving or containing ideas from two or more different countries or cultures, or relating to different cultures.
Cruelty ['kruːlti] (n) behaviour that causes pain or suffering to others.

Detect [dɪˈtek] (v) find out, display, discover or identify the presence or existence of.
Digest [dɪˈdʒest] 1. (n) a substance or mixture obtained by digestion. 2. (v) break down (food) in the alimentary canal into substances that can be absorbed and used by the body.
Digestive [dɪˈdʒestɪv] 1. (adj) of or relating to the process of digesting food. 2. (n) a food or medicine that aids or promotes the digestion of food.
Diplomacy [dɪˈpləməsɪ] (n) 1. statesmanship, discussion(s), talks, dialogue, international relations. 2. the profession managing international relations, typically by a country’s representatives abroad.
Diplomat [ˈdɪpləmæt] (n) an official representing a country abroad.
Discrimination [dɪsˈkrɪmənəʃən] (n) intolerance, unfairness.
Dismiss [dɪsˈmɪs] (v) order or allow to leave, send away, release, part with.
Distribute [dɪsˈtrɪbjuːt] (v) (sth to/among sb/sth) give things to a large number of people; share sth between a number of people.
dormitory  ['dɔːmɪtɔri]  (n) a sleeping quarters, bedchamber, a large bedroom for a number of people in a school or institution.

entertain  [ˌentəˈteɪn]  (v) interest and amuse people, in order to please them.
entire  [enˈtaɪər]  (adj) complete, total, whole, with no part left out.
escape  [ɪsˈkeɪp]  (v) run away, get away from a place where you have been kept as a prisoner.
estuary  ['ɪstjuərɪ]  (n) entry, river mouth, delta.
evolve  [ɪˈvolv]  (v) 1. expand, develop gradually, grow, progress, advance, spread, change from a simple to a more complex form. 2. give off (gas or heat).
expense  [ɪksˈpens]  (n) cost, price, fee, payment, the money that you spend on sth, the cost required for sth; the money spent on sth.

fake  [feɪk]  (adj) false, invalid.
fascinating  ['fæsətɪŋ]  (adj) charming, extremely interesting, glamorous, lovely.
fate  [fɛt]  1. (n) destiny, chance, luck, fortune. 2. (v) be destined to happen, turn out, or act in a particular way.
fizzy  [ˈfɪzɪ]  (adj) (of a beverage) containing bubbles of gas; sparkling, carbonated, gassy, bubbly.
flee  [fliː]  (v)(fled, fled) (from sb/sth-to/into) leave a person or place very quickly.
focus  ['fəʊkəs]  (v) (on/upon smb/sth) concentrate, pay particular attention to one particular subject, situation or person rather than another.
foe  [fəʊ]  (n) an enemy
frown  [fraʊn]  1. (n) a facial expression or look characterized by furrowing brows. 2. (v) make a face; furrow one’s brow in an expression of displeasure.

gang  ['ɡæŋ]  (n) 1. band, team, an organized group of criminals. 2. a group of young people who spend a lot of time together and often cause trouble.
gear  [gɪər]  (n) machinery in a vehicle that turns engine power into movement.
gravity  ['ɡrævɪtɪ]  (n) balance, attraction, fixation, heaviness.
grind  [ɡraɪnd]  (v) mill, smash, rub or cause to rub together, reduce smth to small particles.
gross  [ɡrɔs]  (adj) thick, fat, stout, obese, overweight, big.

harbour  ['haːbə]  (n) port, dock, haven, marina; a place on the coast where vessels find shelter.
harm  [haːm]  (n) damage or injury that is caused by a person or an event.
holy  ['hɔli]  (adj) 1. blessed, sacred, saint, connected with God or a particular religion 2. good in a moral and religious way.
intrude (on/into/upon) [ɪnˈtruːd] (v) 1. to go or be somewhere where you are not wanted or are not supposed to be. 2. put oneself deliberately into a place or situation where one is unwelcome or uninvited.

identity [aɪˈdeɪtnɪ] (n) 1. name, ID, identification, recognition, the fact of being who or what a person or a thing is. 2. characteristics that distinguish people from others.

ignition [ɪɡˈnɪʃn] (n) the action of setting something on fire or starting to burn.

install [ɪnˈstəːl] (v) put, set, place, locate.

interfere [ɪnˈtɜːfr] (v) get involved in and try to influence a situation that doesn’t concern you, in a way that annoys other people.

investigate [ɪnˈvestɪgət] (v) look/examine into, explore, study, research, conduct an investigation.

irritable [ɪrɪˈtərəbl] (adj) moody, annoyed, nervous

issue [ˈɪʃuː] 1. (n) matter, matter in question, topic, problem, an important topic or problem for debate or discussion. 2. (v) print, publish, give to print

jewellery [ˈdʒuːəlri] (n) precious stones, ornaments

jail [ˈdʒeɪl] (v) imprison, put in prison, send to prison; confine

kidney [ˈkɪndni] (n) a pair of organs in the abdominal cavity excreting urine

laughter [ˈlɑːftə] (n) laughing, chuckling, giggling, tittering.

lawsuit [ˈlɔːsjuːt] (n) legal action, a claim or dispute brought to a court

lean [ˈliːn] (v) lean against, bend or move from an upright position.

lifetime [ˈlaɪflaim] (n) the duration of life.

light bulb [laɪtbʌlb] (n) bulb, electric light, a glass bulb inserted into a lamp

magnificent [mæɡˈnɪfɪsnt] (adj) impressively beautiful, or extravagant, breathtaking, impressive, luxurious, elegant, splendid, spectacular, glorious.

major [ˈmeɪdʒər] (adj) vital, great, considerable, utmost, prime, important, serious, or significant.

marsupial [maːˈsjuːpjəl] 1. (adj) pouched, relating to the marsupials. 2. (n) a mammal of an order whose members are born incompletely developed and are typically carried in a pouch on the mother’s belly.

mass [mæs] 1. (n) majority, large/great number, typically large body of matter with no definite shape. 2. (adj) universal, large-scale.
metaphor ['mɛtəfə] (n) trope, a word or a phrase used in an imaginative way.

miserable ['mɪzərəbl] (adj) very unhappy or uncomfortable, sad, depressed.

missionary ['mɪʃənəri] 1. (n) ambassador, messenger, missioner. 2. (n) a person sent on a religious mission/missionary work.

moist [mɔɪst] (adj) damp/dampish, humid, wet/wettish or slightly wet.

monarchy ['mɔnəkɪ] (n) kingship, a form of government with a monarch at the head.

mosque [mɔs] (n) a building in which Muslims worship, a Muslim place of worship.

motion ['məʊʃən] 1. the action or process of moving or being moved, movement, rise and fall, shifting, transit, course. 2. a formal proposal, recommendation, suggestion.

mouthpiece ['maʊθpi:s] 1. a person/a newspaper that informs the public about the opinions of a group of people 2. speaker, agent, representative, a person or organization that speaks on behalf of an organization. 3. a part of a telephone, a telephone receiver.

must [mʌst] (n) need, necessity, want.

myth [mθ] (n) 1. folk tale, folk story, legend, fable, a story from ancient times 2. sth that many people believe, but that doesn’t exist or is false.

Nn

nabat – (n) boiled sugar candy

nutrient ['nju:tərənt] (n) food supply, a substance that provides nourishment essential for growth and the maintenance of life.

Oo

obese [əuˈbiːs] (adj) fat or overweight, stout, plump, oily, heavy.

obsess [əbˈses] (v) to completely fill your mind so that you cannot think of anything else.

offender [əˈfɛndə] 1. (n) a person or thing that offends, does something wrong, or causes problems. 2. (n) a person who commits an illegal act; an offender or a lawbreaker.

opportunity [ˌɒpəˈtjuːnəti] (n) chance, possibility, favourable time, a particular situation that makes it possible to do or achieve sth.

Pp

painkiller ['pɛnm kɪlə] (n) a drug or medicine for relieving pain, pain reliever.

partial ['pə:ʃəl] (adj) not complete, incomplete, limited, one-sided Ant: impartial.

patriotic [ˈpætriəstɪk] (adj) nationalist, nationalistic, having or expressing devotion to and vigorous support for one’s country.

persuade [pəˈswəːd] (v) assure, convince someone to do smth through reasoning or argument.

promote [prəˈmɔːt] (v) support, encourage, stimulate, advance or raise someone to a higher position or rank.

poison ['pɔɪzn] 1. (n) a substance that causes death or harm. 2. (v) harm or kill a person or an animal by giving them poison.

poly [ˈpɔlɪp] (n) polypus, a small growth
pottery ['pɔtəri] (n) china, crockery, ceramics, stoneware, pots, dishes, etc. made of earthenware or baked clay.

poverty ['pɔvrɪ] (n) the state of being poor.

pray [preɪ] (v) 1. speak to God, especially give thanks or ask for help; bend the knee, beg, worship. 2. hope very much that smth will happen.

pregnant ['pregnənt] (adj) expecting/carrying a baby/a child.

proclaim [prəˈkleɪm] (v) declare, tell people about sth important officially.

prohibit [prəˈhaɪbɪt] (v) forbid, sth/sb from doing sth, stop sth from being done or used especially by law.

proof [pruːf] (n) verification, information document, etc.; witness, evidence or argument establishing a fact that is true.

provide [prəˈvɔɪd] (v) 1. supply, give, grant, deliver, donate, contribute, make available for use. 2. arrange, make adequate preparation for a possible event.

provincial [prəˈvɪnjəl] (adj) of or concerning a province of a country or empire nonurban, rural, country; syn: regional, state, territorial, district.

put forward [put ˈfɔːwɔrd] (v) push, move out, pull out, propose, nominate.

race [reɪs] (n) a group of people who share the same language, history, culture.

rank [ræŋk] 1. (v) give a rank, classify, categorize, rate, grade, group, catalog, organize, arrange. 2. (n) row, line, column, procession.

record [rɪˈkɔːrd] (v) register, write down, make notes, set down in writing for later reference, especially officially.

reef [rɪf] 1. (n) metal, coral, or sand just above or below the surface of the sea. 2. (v) take in one or more reefs of (a sail).

reign [reɪn] (v) rule over, lead, dominate, rule as a king or a queen.

relieve [rɪˈliːv] (v) 1. remove or reduce an unpleasant feeling or pain. 2. make a problem less serious. 3. make sth less boring.

religion [rɪˈlɪdʒən] (n) faith, belief, worship, the belief in and worship of a superhuman controlling power; the belief in the existence of God.

remedy [ˈrɛmədi] 1. (v) put/set right, cure, relieve, amend. 2. (n) cure, medication, treatment, a medicine for a disease or injury.

rigorous [ˈrɪɡərəs] (adj) 1. severe, strict, extremely careful, done carefully. 2. demanding that particular rules processes are strictly followed.

risk [rɪsk] (v) endanger, (n) a dangerous situation.

rule [ruːl] 1. manage, control, conduct, drive, govern, lead, guide. 2. reign, rule (over) the country.

sacred ['sɛkridoʊd] (adj) holy, blessed, connected with God, a sacred image, shrine/temple.

scream [skriːm] 1. (v) cry, give a loud high cry. 2. (n) a loud high cry made by sb (noise).

shipbuilding ['ʃɪp ˈbɪldɪŋ] (n) boatbuilding

sickness ['sɪknɪs] (n) illness, disease.
siren [ˈsəʊrɪn] (n) a device that makes a long loud sound as a signal or warning.
slow down [ˈsləʊdaʊn] (v) 1. be slow, be late. 2. delay, postpone
smash [smæʃ] (v) break sth violently.
smooth [smuːð] (adj) plane, flat, unwrinkled, silky, having an even and regular surface or consistency.
snatch [snætʃ] (v) grab, take sth quickly and often rudely or roughly.
sophisticated [səˈfɪstɪkatɪd] (adj) 1. complex, complicated 2. precise, nice. 3. developed to a high degree of complexity of a machine/system/technique, advanced, modern, experienced.
spectacular [spækˈtækjjuələr] 1. (adj) striking, picturesque, eye-catching, breathtaking, impressive, dramatic, beautiful. 2. (n) an event produced on a large scale and with striking effects.
spot [spɒt] (n) mark, dot, a small round mark, differing in color or texture from the surface around it.
splinter [spʌnt] (v) speak a lot about sth, repeat sth in a boring way.
stimulate [ˈstɪmjuleɪt] (v) 1. raise levels of physiological or nervous activity 2. encourage, excite 3. afford, admit, appreciate.
stressful [ˈstresfl] (adj) causing mental or emotional stress or anxiety and worry.
subculture [ˈsʌbkaʊltʃər] (n) 1. the behaviour and beliefs of a particular group of people in society that are different from those of most people. 2. a cultural group within a larger culture, often having beliefs or interests.
supersonic [ˈsjuːpəˈsɔnɪk] (adj) involving or denoting a speed greater than that of sound. ultrasonic, hypersonic, faster-than-sound.
surveillance [səˈvɛrɪləns] (n) the act of carefully watching a person suspected of a crime or a place where a crime may be committed.
swan [swɑːn] (n) a large waterbird with a long flexible neck, short legs, webbed feet, a broad bill.
swap [swɒp] (v) give smth to smb and receive smth in exchange; change, vary, alter, exchange, barter, trade.

Tt

tag [tæɡ] (n) a label/sticker attached to someone or sth for the purpose of identification or to give other information; label, badge, sticker.
take risks – do sth even though you know that sth bad could happen as a result.
tendency [ˈtɛndənsi] (n) an interest in smth, possibility
tenor [ˈtenɔr] (n) sense, the general character, content or meaning of sth.
tense [ˈtens] (adj) intense, strained, uncomfortable, troubled
textile [tekststəl] 1. (adj) of or relating to fabric or weaving; the textile industry. 2. (n) fabric, cloth, material.
tolerant [ˈtɔlərənt] (adj) able to accept what other people say or do even if you don’t agree with it, liberal, (ant: intolerant)
track [træk] (v) watch, look after, follow the course or of someone or smth, typically in order to find them or note their location at various points.
transistorize [trænzˈɪstrəraɪz] (v) design or make with transistors rather than vacuum tubes.
transmission [trænzˈmɪʃən] guide, broadcasting, telecast
treasure ['treʒə] (n) a collection of valuable things, precious metals as gold, silver, all jewellery riches.
tremendous [triˈmendəs] (adj) huge, enormous, great, immense
trope [trɔːp] (n) a figurative or metaphorical use of a word or an expression; a word or phrase that is used in a way that is different from its usual meaning in order to create a particular mental image or effect.
trouble ['trʌbl] (n) 1. problems or difficulty, inconvenience, worry 2. a situation that is difficult or dangerous.
tuck [trʌk] 1. (n) lorry 2. (v) convey by truck.
trunk [trʌŋk] (n) the main stem/body of a tree as distinct from its branches and roots.
twin [tWIN] (v) link, combine, join, couple, join two people or things closely together.

ultimate [ˈɔltəmit] (adj) final, concluding, resulting, being or happening at the end of a process.
unemployed [ˈʌnɪmplɔd] (adj) workless, jobless (person), out-of-work.
unemployment [ˈʌnɪmplɔrənt] (n) the state of being unemployed, the fact of a number of people not having a job/ without a job.
unique [juːˈni:k] (adj) unlike anything else; distinct, special, wonderful, admirable, remarkable.
unitary [ˈjʊnɪtəri] (adj) a sort of unitary wholeness of or relating to a unit or units.
vaporetto [ˌvæpəˈretəu] (n) a canal boat, a motorboat used for public transportation in Venice.
victim [ˈvɪktɪm] (n) sacrifice, fatality, loss; a person harmed, injured, or killed as a result of an accident.
volunteer [vələnˈtər] 1. (n) a person who freely offers to take part in an enterprise or undertake a task. 2. (v) freely offer to do smth.
widespread ['wɜːdspred] (adj) universal, global, worldwide.
whistle ['wɪsl] (v) emit a clear, high-pitched sound by forcing breath through a small hole between one’s lips or teeth.
X-ray(s) ['ɛks 'reɪ] (n) Ro(en)gentgen rays

yank [jæŋk] (v) pull sth/sb hard/quickly and suddenly.
Abbreviations

- TB - Teacher’s Book
- SB - Student’s Book
- Ss - Students
- N.L. - Native Language
- Maths - Mathematics
- H - History
- GH - General History
- Geog. - Geography
- C - Chemistry
- B - Biology
- S - Science
- Inf. - Informatics
- PT - Physical Training
- M - Music
- IW - Individual Work
- PW - Pair Work
- GW - Group Work
- CW - Collective Work
- UI - Useful Information
- KWL - Know/Want
- HAF - Heydar Aliyev Foundation

References

- Language Assessment-Brown H.D. - 2004
- Grammar in Context 2-Sandra N. Elbaum - 2005
- Grammar in Context 3-Sandra N. Elbaum - 2006
- Steps to Success. A starter pack for Newly Qualified Teachers. British Council
- Best Practices in Reading. -Martha Crow (Options Publishing Inc)
- Understanding and Using English Grammar-1999. (Betty Schrampf Azar)
- Oxford Advanced Learner’s Dictionary - 2003
- Best Teaching Quotes/proverbs, sayings, idioms and metaphors
- English-TQDK - 2010/2014
- www.learningenglish.org.uk
- www.teachingenglish.org.uk
- www.bbcworldservice.com
- https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heydar_Aliyev
- https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heydar_Aliyev_Foundation
- www.bbcworldservice.com
- www.bestenglishquotes4u.com
- www.uniqueteachingresources.com
Ümumtəhsil məktəblərinin 9-cu sinfi üçün "İngilis dili" (əsas xarici dil kimi) fənni üzrə dərslik

Tərtibçi heyət:
Müəlliflər: Xalidə Rüstəmovə Qızıtəməm Quliyeva
Redaktoru Naïlə Bağırova
Bədii redaktoru Ləsfiə Taliban
Texniki redaktoru Jale Kemilə
Dizayneri Tural Səfiyev
Korrektoru Billurə Ələkbərova

Azərbaycan Respublikası Təhsil Nazirliyinin 03.06.2016-cı il tarixli 369 nömrəli əmri ilə təşdiq edilmişdir.

© Azərbaycan Respublikası Təhsil Nazirliyi – 2016

Kağız formatı 70x100\(^{1/16}\). Fiziki çap vərəqi 12,75. Əhəyə sayı 204. Tiraj 99 900. Pulsuz.

Çəşəoğlu metbəsində çap olunmuşdur Bəki, M. Müşfiq küç., 2A, Tel.: 502-46-91